

Travels into the interior parts of Africa, by the way of the Cape of Good Hope; in the years 1780, 81, 82, 83, 84, and 85 / Tr. from the French of M. Le Vaillant. Illus. with 12 elegant copper-plates.

Contributors

Le Vaillant, François, 1753-1824.

Publication/Creation

London : Printed for G. G. J. and J. Robinson, 1790.

Persistent URL

<https://wellcomecollection.org/works/mbdsbyba>

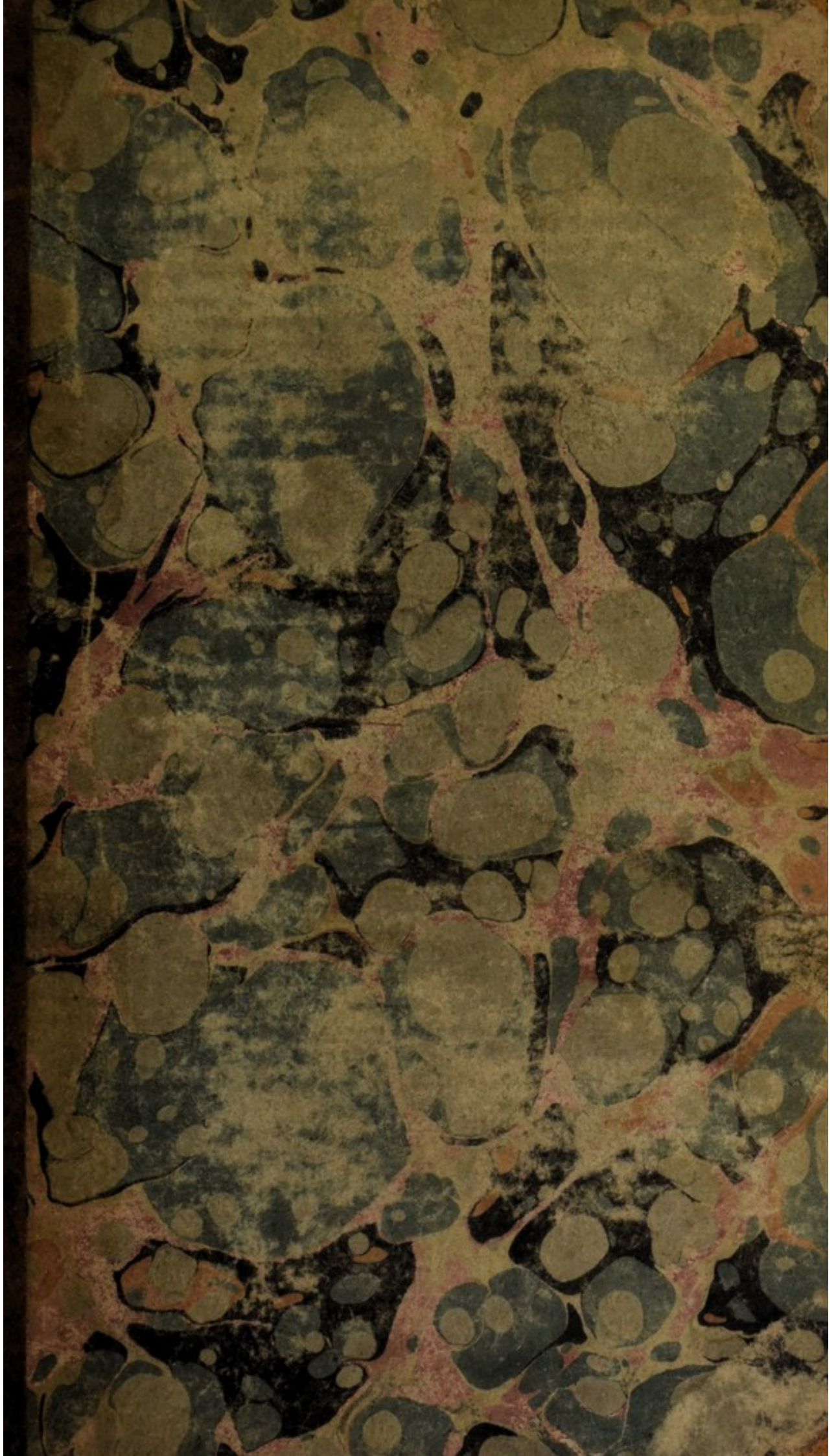
License and attribution

This work has been identified as being free of known restrictions under copyright law, including all related and neighbouring rights and is being made available under the Creative Commons, Public Domain Mark.

You can copy, modify, distribute and perform the work, even for commercial purposes, without asking permission.



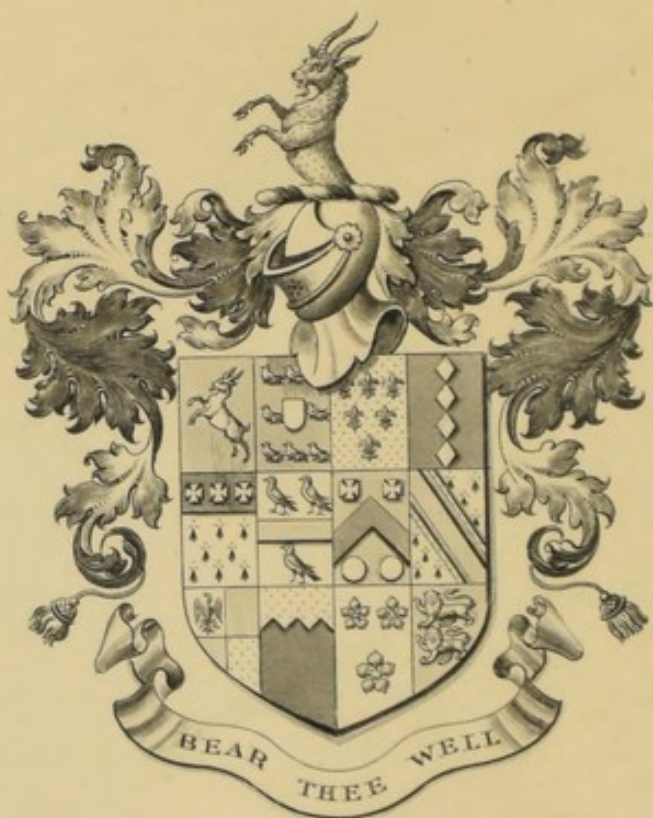
Wellcome Collection
183 Euston Road
London NW1 2BE UK
T +44 (0)20 7611 8722
E library@wellcomecollection.org
<https://wellcomecollection.org>



No. 7/2

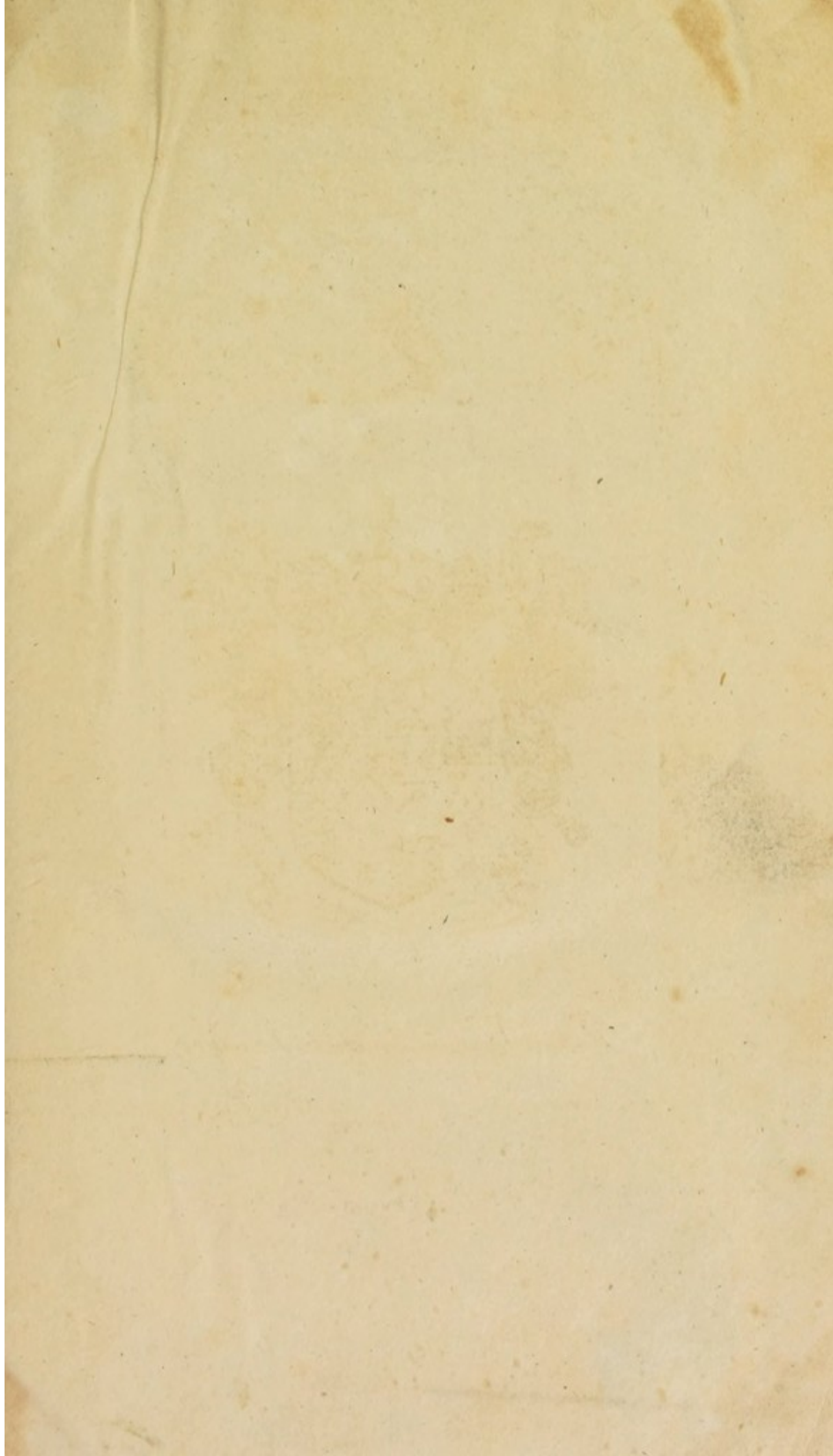
33378/B

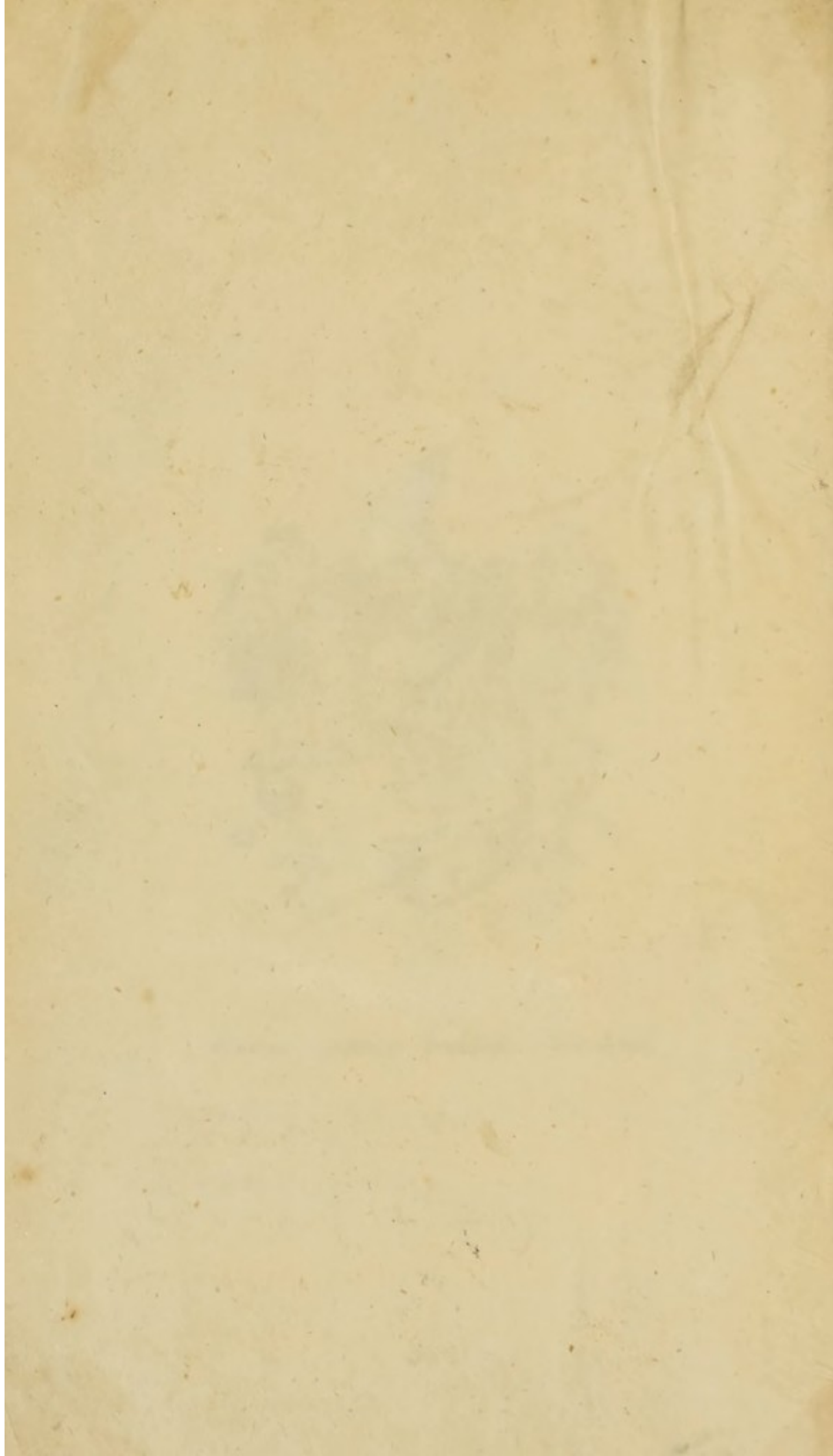
vol 1 only

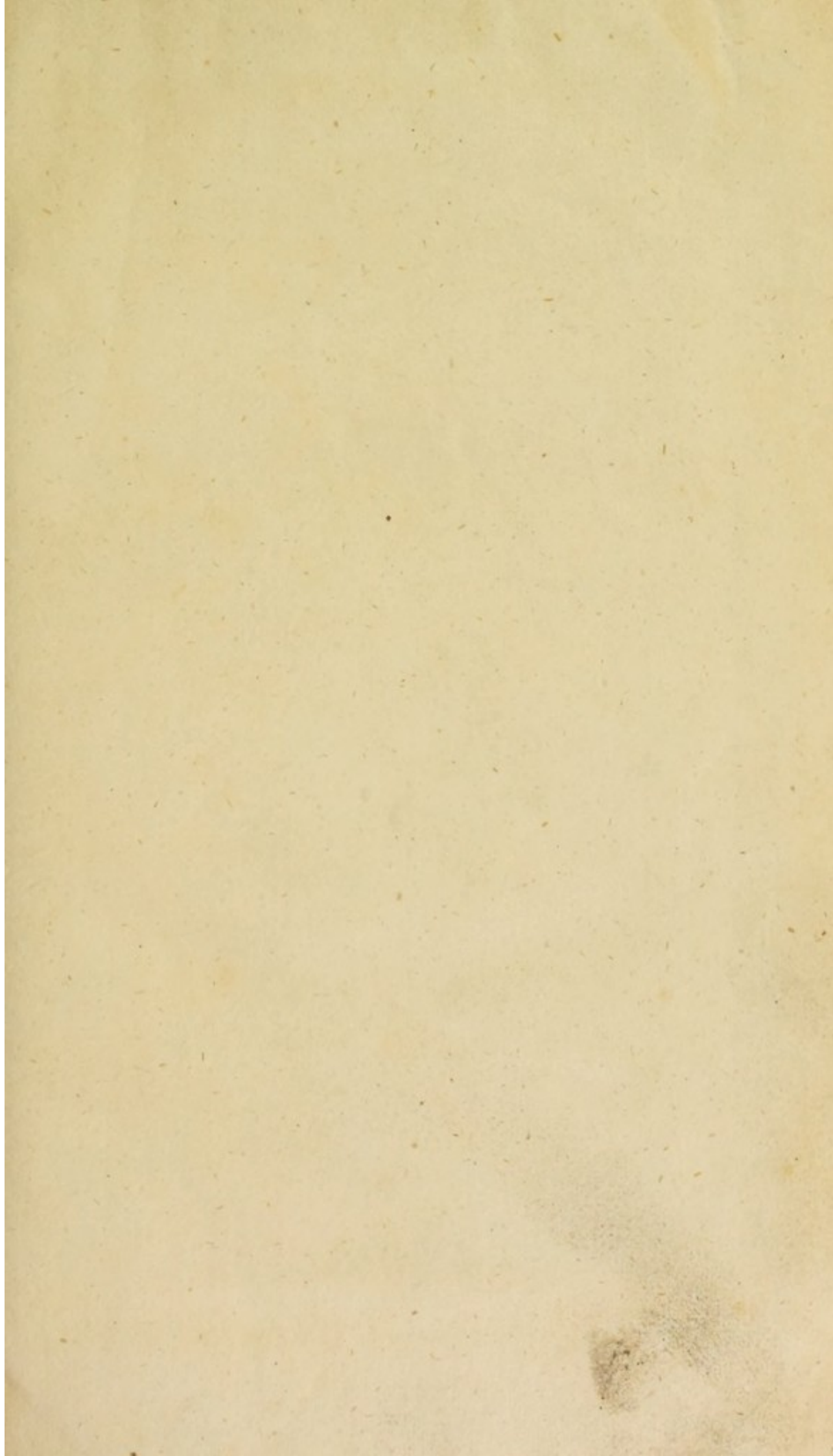



Thomas Newman Frederick Bardwell.

LE VAILLANT, François



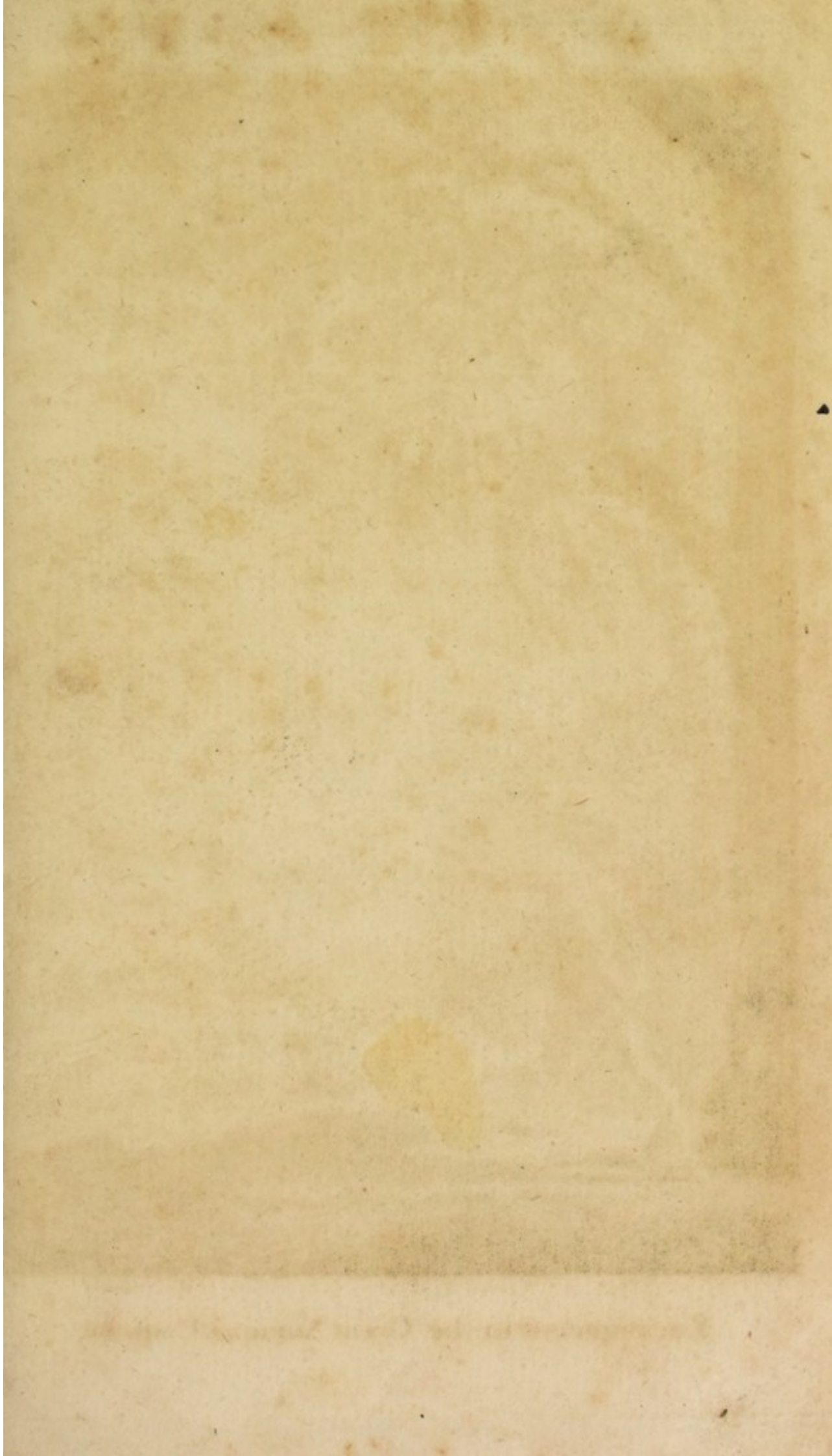


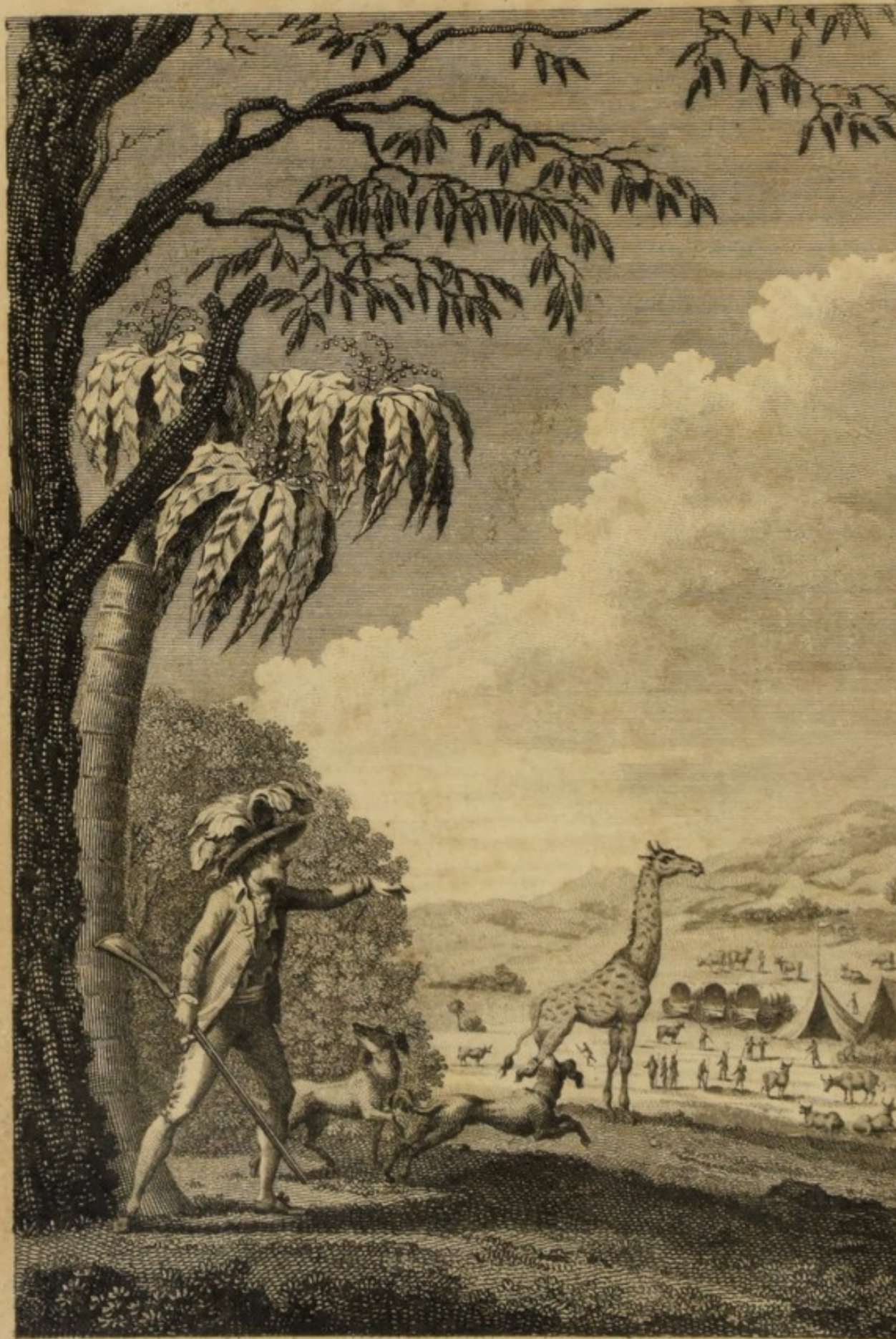




Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2016 with funding from
Wellcome Library

<https://archive.org/details/b28776252>





Heath Sc.

Encampment in the Great Nimiqua Country.

*A. Darby Esq
Oct 6 1812*

T R A V E L S

INTO THE

INTERIOR PARTS

OF

A F R I C A,

BY THE WAY OF THE

CAPE OF GOOD HOPE;

IN THE YEARS 1780, 81, 82, 83, 84 AND 85.

TRANSLATED FROM THE FRENCH OF M. LE VAILLANT.

ILLUSTRATED WITH TWELVE ELEGANT COPPER-PLATES.

VOL. I.

L O N D O N:

PRINTED FOR G. G. J. AND J. ROBINSON, PATERNOSTER-ROW.

M.DCC.XC.



ADVERTISEMENT.

THE remaining two Volumes of this curious and interesting Work, containing an Account of the Author's Travels towards the western coasts of the southern extremity of Africa, are now translating, and will be published with all convenient speed.

ADVERTISEMENT.

THE remaining two Volumes of this curious and interesting Work, containing an Account of the Author's Travels towards the western coasts of the Southern continent of Africa, are now ready, and will be published with all convenient speed.

AUTHOR'S PREFACE.

NATURALISTS have thought proper to establish relations between the anatomy of animals and that of man, and to trace out the former from the latter. By means of this arrangement, understood only by connoisseurs, those parts on which a bird rests all its weight are called its *toes*; that part which rises more or less perpendicularly, instead of being called a leg according to the common idea, is named a *foot*; the latter having the heel above it, is immediately followed by the leg, which generally passes for the *thigh*; and, in short, this last part, which in the living bird is scarcely distinguishable, is concealed, and, as one may say, forms a part of the body itself. Hence we may conclude, that the foot of a heron, for example, is as large as its whole body: an assertion which would appear ridiculous and absurd to those not

previously informed, that this methodical distribution is adopted by all the literati. It is therefore plain that a bird does not walk on its feet and talons, but on its claws. This explanation I have thought necessary, in order that I may be better understood, both in the relation of my voyages, and that more extensive work to which it is only, in some measure, an introduction. Should I have occasion to speak after this arrangement of my acquisitions in quadrupedes, birds, &c. obliged to make use of the terms and measures established by ornithologists, people who are not naturalists, and who may deign to read my work, would certainly find errors and obscurity in three-fourths of my descriptions, did I not give them this key, which is indispensably necessary to whoever may, for the first time, cast their eyes over this part of natural history.

I can readily forgive the authors of those voluminous works, and the immense compilations in which old books are laid under contribution, which are stuffed with long quotations, and where the dreams of the imagination and ignorance are present-

ed

ed as immutable truths, merely because they are ancient. But when a writer, seized with a mania for a certain science, has not in himself sufficient resources to extend its progress; when, immured in his cabinet, he pretends to establish principles and dictate laws; when he prostitutes the valuable gifts of genius to propagate old errors, and to cover, with the graces of elocution, lies received as truths by our forefathers; however he may disguise, twist, or appropriate them to himself, I cannot forgive him whilst he thus evidently adorns himself with the spoils of others, whatever trouble he may have taken to arrange the different patches.

Fully resolved to speak only of what I have seen or done, I shall introduce nothing into this work which is not my own; and on this account I shall certainly not be reproached for the faults of those who preceded me.

If in some places of my relation observations be found diametrically opposite to those of other travellers, I shall not go so far as to assert that they have been deceived: I mean to depreciate no one; I choose rather

to suppose, on certain articles, that difference of time, or their being seen under different points of view, may have produced differences also in their relations and results; they then become only errors or illusions, of the same nature as an optical deception,

Respecting objects, however, which, having been too slightly observed, disfigure the truth essentially, my opinion (though I wish it not to be universally adopted) will never give way when I am certain of facts, and advance nothing but what is supported by proofs.

It is not above a century ago that a taste for travelling has prevailed in Europe. The French above all, more than any other people happy in their country, and attached to their native soil, quitted it with reluctance, and considered the absence of a month as a kind of banishment; they were contented with waiting for, and eagerly swallowing, the ridiculous stories published by daring impostors respecting remote nations, and they amused themselves with accounts of their wonderful discoveries and incredible adventures. The exaggerating

ating writer bargained, if I may say so, with the public credulity, and thought himself well recompensed if he found only one-half of the bombast and the wonderful contained in his work exploded. The sciences wandered in the darkness of uncertainty, and natural history was not even in its infancy.

By little and little the genius of discoveries extended her wings, and the letters and the arts have given place to the sciences. A passion for travelling is awakened; that desire, still more insatiable, of acquiring knowledge, and comparing the objects of it, has increased in proportion to the wonders produced by it: the more dangers have been removed, the more men have passed their ancient bounds; and what formerly appeared an insurmountable obstacle, at present is only a puerile excuse, a shameful evasion to conceal one's weakness and timidity.

Being educated more than any other person in quite different principles, I always entertained a most ardent desire for travelling, which I endeavoured to repress; but it was only by yielding to its transports,

ports, that I was able to moderate its violence.

I crossed the seas, as I wished to survey other men, other productions, and other climates; I penetrated into some of the unknown desarts of Africa; and I may say that I conquered a small portion of the earth.

I had no wish to acquire reputation; I was conscious of no merit that could entitle me to it, and I employed my time only in pleasure.

As my friends and my family were of opinion that an account of my travels, and some details respecting my discoveries in natural history, might be of utility, I have given them this account and these details, such as they are, claiming to myself on this account no other merit than that of complaisance, and renouncing every kind of pretension to literature, the burden of which I could not support.

It may perhaps be thought strange, that to give an account of travels lately undertaken into Africa I have been obliged to return to the past, and to conduct my readers to the first steps of my infancy
in

in South America. To explain this, I must observe, that I thought it would not be improper to justify, by the commencement of my life, my manner of seeing, thinking, and acting, which always will be agreeable to the taste of the climate, and which, judged perhaps with severity, would not fail to displease those obstinate minds who can never suffer their prejudices to be destroyed, or principles and customs hitherto received to be attacked, without being out of temper. But in whatever manner my freedom in expressing my thoughts, and even in pretending to correct the errors of genius, may be considered, I think it of importance to let them know, that no private hatred, no envy, and no secret displeasure, can overbalance in my mind my regard to truth, which I cherish above all things, and to which I have sacrificed, upon more than one occasion, even my vanity.

At the end of this work I shall present the lovers of natural history with a general description of all the individuals, quadrupeds and birds, which I procured in my excursions, and have now in my possession.

tion. Those animals, of which accounts have been never before given, or which have been hitherto unknown, will be accompanied with coloured engravings, representing several new genera, and considerable varieties in the species. Though a description and figure of the giraffe have been given after some authors, this has not prevented me from giving new ones. What has been hitherto said respecting this animal, and the figures which have been engraved of it, have no resemblance to the original in my cabinet, or to what I have observed of its manners in its native country.

INTRODUCTION.

THAT part of Guiana, belonging to the Dutch, which is under the government of the West-India Company, is perhaps the least known to naturalists, though of all South America it is that, without doubt, which presents the most curious and extraordinary productions of every kind. Situated under the scorching climate of the torrid zone, five degrees north of the line, this country, still enveloped by the crust of time, conceals, if I may so express it, the focus where nature forms her exceptions to those general rules which she seems to have established. Extending along the coast about an hundred leagues, its breadth is almost unlimited. Here the river Surinam rolls its majestic stream: and upon its left bank, three miles from the sea, rises Paramaribo, the principal place of this vast colony; the spot where I was born, and the scene of my

B

infant

infant years. Educated by enlightened parents, who endeavoured to procure those valuable and interesting objects which are dispersed throughout the country, I had continually before my eyes the fruits of their labour, and I enjoyed at my ease the whole of their curious collection. From my earliest years, these tender parents, who could not be a moment without me, and who by their taste were often exposed to distant journeys, and to be long absent at the extremities of the colony, carried me along with them, making me a sharer in their travels, their fatigues, and their amusements. My first years were thus spent in the desarts, and I was born almost a savage. When reason, which in warm climates always precedes age, began to dawn in my mind, my taste was not long in displaying itself, and my parents did every thing in their power to assist the first efforts of my curiosity. Under such excellent instructors I every day tasted new pleasures: I heard them discourse in a manner suited to my capacity on the objects which they had acquired, and on those which they hoped to procure in future. By these means an
abundance

abundance of ideas and relations was treasured up in my mind—at first, in a confused manner, I must own; but gradually with more order and method. Nature, therefore, was my earliest instructor, because it was towards her that my views were first directed.

Soon after, a desire of making acquisitions, and a spirit of imitation, added impetuosity, and I may say impatience, to my amusing pursuits. Every thing seemed to whisper to my self-love that I also should attempt to form a cabinet of natural history. Suffering myself, therefore, to be led away by this seducing idea, without loss of time, I traitorously declared war against the weakest animals, and began to search for caterpillars, butterflies, beetles, and in a word for insects of every kind.

When people labour for themselves, they may, with confined means, and rude and uncultivated talents, form an indifferent work. but in my opinion they will always succeed well, when they spare neither time, care, nor attention; and when they employ all their talents and abilities. With such a disposition,

the almost certain sign of success, I beheld my pretty collection of insects increase daily under my hands. I set the highest value upon it, and esteemed it beyond measure. As I had been the sole creator of it, the reader may easily guess how much superior I considered it to that of my parents. Pride, which is blind, makes the masterpieces of folly and genius march hand in hand.

Entirely occupied with my enjoyments, I had never yet perceived that some obstacle always occurs to prevent the success of every enterprize.

In one of our excursions we had killed a female ape, of that species which in the country are called *Baboons*. As she carried on her back a young one, which had not been wounded, we took them both along with us; and, when we returned to the plantation, my ape had not quitted the shoulders of its mother. It clung so closely to them, that I was obliged to have the assistance of a negro to disengage it; but scarcely was it separated from her, when, like a bird, it darted upon a wooden block that stood near, covered with my father's peruke, which

it

it embraced with its four paws, and it could not absolutely be compelled to quit its position. Deceived by its instinct, it still imagined itself to be on the back of its mother, and under her protection. As it seemed perfectly at ease on the peruke, I resolved to suffer it to remain, and to feed it there with goats milk. It continued in its error for three weeks; but after that period emancipating itself from its own authority, it quitted the fostering peruke, and by its amusing tricks became the friend and the favourite of the whole family.

I had, however, without suspecting it, introduced the wolf among my flocks. One morning, on entering my chamber, the door of which I had been so imprudent as to leave open, I beheld my unworthy pupil making a hearty breakfast on my noble collection. In the first transports of my passion I resolved to strangle it in my arms; but rage and fury soon gave place to pity, when I perceived that its voraciousness had exposed it to the most cruel punishment. In eating the beetles it had swallowed some of the pins upon which they were fixed; and, though it made

a thousand efforts to throw them up, all its exertions were in vain. The torture which it suffered made me forget the devastation it had occasioned ; I thought only of affording it relief : but neither my tears, nor all the art of my father's slaves, whom I called from all quarters with loud cries, were able to preserve its life. This accident disconcerted me very much, but it did not discourage me : I soon gave myself up to new researches ; and, not contented with one treasure, I wished to unite several. By a natural progression I turned my attention towards birds. As our slaves did not supply me with a sufficient number, I armed myself with a tube*, and an Indian bow : in a short space of time I could use them with much dexterity. I spent whole days in watching ; in a word, I became a keen sportsman. It was then observed, and I myself was sensible of it, that this taste was changed into a violent passion, which disturbed even my hours of repose, and to which years have still added strength.

* *Sarbacanne*—a kind of tube, through which small darts are blown with the mouth.

Some of my friends have accused me of coolness and insensibility; and a greater number of them have considered the singular journeys I afterwards undertook as rash enterprizes. The former I readily forgive; to the latter I shall make no reply: those, however, who give themselves the least trouble to review the first pursuits of my infancy, will be less surpris'd at this appearance of originality; and will easily perceive that my education, while it accounts for the cause of it, pleads also its excuse.

Some time after, my parents, who had fixed the period of their departure for Europe, and who sought no other happiness than that of being united to their family and friends, having settled their affairs, I embarked with them in a ship called the Catherine, and, on the 4th of April 1763, set sail for Holland. In the joy of my heart I partook, by anticipation, of all those pleasures and amusements which my parents propos'd to enjoy during the passage. A curiosity, very natural at my age, added to my transports: but this agitation, or rather delirium, did not render me insensible to regret. In

so short a space of time I could not become ungrateful, and without emotion lose sight of that beneficent country in which I first drew breath. I often cast a fond look ~~on~~ those happy shores, which were still becoming more and more distant. In proportion as they receded from me, and as wafted by the winds I approached the frozen climates of the north, a dismal sadness threw a gloom over my imagination, and dissipated my conjectures concerning the future.

After a dangerous and disagreeable passage we cast anchor in the Texel, about nine or ten in the morning, on the 12th of July following.

Being at length arrived in Europe, every thing I saw appeared so new to me—I shewed so much impatience, harassed people with so many questions, and every object that presented itself to my view seemed so extraordinary—that I myself was an object of astonishment to all those who were around me. My importunities, however, did not always raise the laugh against me; and I made an ample return, by pertinent remarks on America, for the information which the
people

people of Europe had the condescension to give me.

After spending some time in Holland we repaired to France, to the city where my father was born, and where he settled in the bosom of his family. Here I had a new opportunity of indulging my taste, in the cabinet of Mr. Bécœur, which, for the ornithology of Europe, contains the most numerous and best preserved collection I have ever met with.

In Surinam I had followed a plan, with respect to birds, which succeeded very well, but which spoke little to the imagination, and still less to the eyes. The only method I knew, was to preserve their skins by putting them between the leaves of large books; but here a quite different spectacle awakened all my senses. Besides the merit of preservation, it was necessary to restore their proper forms. These two essential points embarrassed me much: I resolved to make them a peculiar study; and to these I devoted my whole attention. During a residence of two years in Germany, and of seven in Lorraine and Alsace, I made prodigious havoc among
the

the feathered tribe. To the distinction of species I wished to join also a thorough knowledge of their manners; and I was never perfectly satisfied with my excursions, but when I was able to surprize the male and the female in such a situation as no longer permitted me to doubt of their sex. I have often spent whole weeks in watching, to distinguish the species of birds, before I could procure a pair.

In the space of eight or nine years, therefore, by care and labour, and after many attempts and much devastation, I was able not only to give to these animals, so tender and delicate, their proper forms; but also to keep them in that pure and sound state of preservation, which makes all the merit of my collection. By being habituated to live with them in the fields, in the woods, and in their most secret retreats, I have learned also to distinguish the sexes in the most invariable manner; a divining art, if I may use the expression, which I do not pretend to consider as a great merit, but which a very small number of ornithologists have acquired. How often have I seen in cabinets, curious
enough

enough in other respects, sometimes forced separations, sometimes monstrous and unnatural alliances! Here, placed as male and female, two beings that had never met together; and there, a male and a female classed as two different species, &c.

In this interesting part of natural history I more and more acquired knowledge; but I confess that, instead of being satisfied, it only proved to me the insufficiency of my own strength. A more extensive field was, however, about to be displayed before me: opportunity seemed to call me at a distance, and to invite me to put off the time no longer.

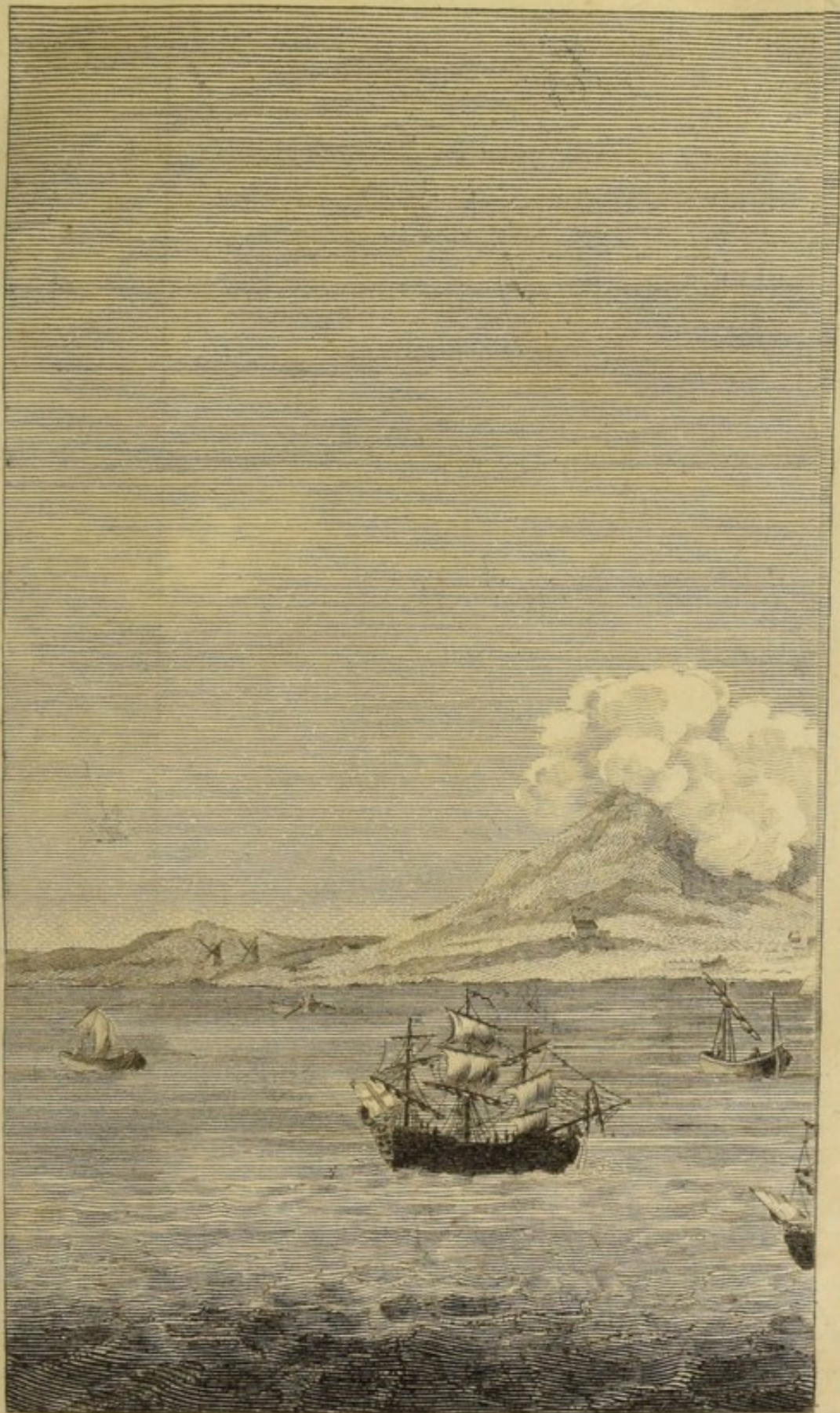
In the course of the year 1777, a favourable circumstance having conducted me to Paris, like every other stranger who arrives for the first time in that capital, I paid my tribute of admiration to the cabinets of the curious, and of men of letters. I was charmed with the beauty and variety of the objects which they contained, and with the prodigious number of individuals of every species, which, like a forced contribution, had come
from

from the four quarters of the world to be classed methodically, as far as is possible, in a space always unluckily too confined. During a residence of three years, I saw, studied, and made myself acquainted with all the most celebrated cabinets; but their superb collections soon made me uneasy: they left a vacuum in my mind which nothing could fill up. I no longer beheld, in these, assemblages of foreign spoils, but general magazines, where different beings, ranged without choice, and without taste, were buried in profound sleep for science. Nothing gave me any precise information respecting their manners, their customs, and their habitudes, which are things the most essential to be known. This was the study which had engaged the greatest share of my attention in my youth. I had read, it is true, different works upon natural history, but filled with contradictions so disgusting, that the taste which is not yet formed must lose much by perusing them. Above all, I had studied, with the utmost avidity, those immortal masterpieces, consecrated for the use of posterity

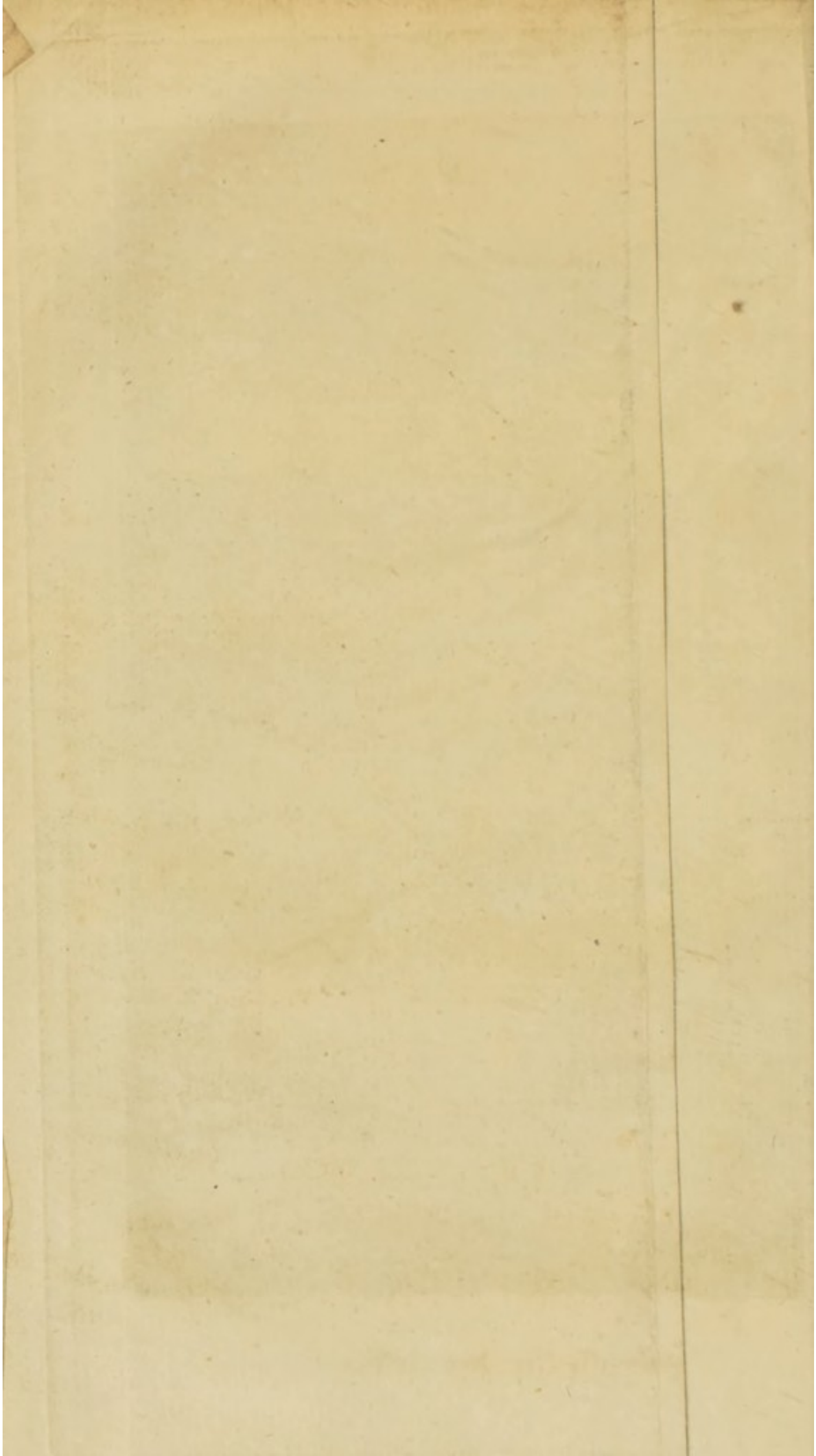
rity by one of the greatest geniuses who have followed the same pursuits. I every day burnt fresh incense at the feet of his statue: but the magic of his eloquence did not seduce me so far as to make me admire the flights of his imagination; and I could not pardon in the philosopher the exaggerations of the poet.

Besides, and above all, I was continually turning my thoughts towards those parts of the globe which, having never been explored, might, by affording new knowledge, help to rectify that already acquired. I considered as supremely happy the mortal who should have the courage to seek it at the source; and in this respect the interior parts of Africa appeared to me a Peru. It was a country as yet untouched for the naturalist. Full of these ideas, I persuaded myself that the ardor of zeal might make up for want of genius; and that, by being an accurate observer, one might become a great enough writer. My enthusiasm suggested to me that I was the privileged person for whom this enterprize was reserved. I readily listened

ened to its seducing dictates, and from that moment I devoted myself to it. Neither the ties of affection, nor those of friendship, were capable of diverting me from my purpose. I communicated my intention to no one; and, blind to every obstacle, I quitted Paris on the 17th of July 1780.



View of the Mountains at the Cap



T R A V E L S
I N T O T H E
I N T E R I O R P A R T S
O F
A F R I C A.

VOYAGE TO THE CAPE.

IMPATIENT to carry my intended plan into execution, I repaired to Holland, where I visited the principal cities of that republic, and took a view of their curiosities. When I arrived at Amsterdam, I found treasures, of which I had before entertained no idea. I was received with the utmost politeness by all the literati, and I had free access to every cabinet. But what principally excited my admiration was that of Mr. Temminck, treasurer to the East-India Company. In that beautiful collection I observed a multitude of valuable objects which

I had

I had never seen in France. Every thing in it appeared to me extremely rare, and to be in a state of the highest preservation. His noble place for breeding birds also exhibited, in an admirable series, a double view of nature and art, united to overcome the effects of climate. There the enchanted eye may admire alive the most beautiful and least known individuals of every species; and there one may see, by the assiduous care bestowed upon them, birds the most distant and the most remote from one another multiply and propagate, as if they lived in their native countries. This sight, I confess, still served to redouble my ardor; and completely fortified me against every obstacle, and against all those dangers which I had resolved to encounter.

Having soon formed an intimate friendship with Mr. Temminck, he shewed me every mark of attention and kindness. As he had it in his power, more than any one else, to favour my design, I did not hesitate to communicate it to him. Being so congenial with his own pursuits, he highly approved of it; and pointed out those means
which

which I ought to pursue in order to succeed. He himself spared neither care nor labour. I was happy enough to obtain permission to take a passage for the Cape in a vessel belonging to the East-India Company. The time of my departure was fixed: and I procured from my respectable friend very warm recommendations; without which, by a singular fatality, as will be seen hereafter, I should have been infallibly exposed to the most cruel embarrassment.

Matters being thus far settled, I employed myself, without remission, in making the necessary preparations for this grand enterprize. When I had procured every thing that I thought likely to be of use to me in the interior parts of Africa, I took leave of my friends, and of Europe; and, setting out in a boat which came to receive me, was conducted to the Texel aboard of the *Held-Woltemaade**, a vessel destined for Ceylon, but which was to touch at the Cape of Good Hope. The wind being unfavourable for quitting the Texel, we were under the necessity of waiting eight days.

* The Captain's name was S—— V——.

During that interval, I learned that our vessel was an *ex-voto* of the East-India Company, in commemoration of a gallant action performed by an inhabitant of the Cape, named *Woltemaade*, who during a dreadful storm had been able, with the assistance of his horse, to save fourteen seamen belonging to a vessel shipwrecked in Table Bay; but that he himself, the victim of his generous efforts, had perished in his last attempt, owing to his own fatigue, and that of his horse, added to the weight of the unfortunate men who crowded upon him, from a dread that the vessel might sink before he could be again able to return. A particular account of this very affecting catastrophe may be seen in Dr. Sparmann's Voyage to the Cape.

The wind at length becoming favourable, we unmoored, at eleven o'clock in the morning, on the 19th of December 1781, the very day before the English commenced hostilities against the Dutch. Had we remained twenty-four hours longer, the Company would not have permitted us to depart; which would have disconcerted me very unseasonably, and might have perhaps ruined my plan, and even

my hopes. Cloudy weather and a thick fog enabled us to pass through the Channel without being observed by the English, and we gained the open sea, cleaving the waves in perfect security, without ever suspecting that the flames of war had burst forth in every quarter around us. Sailing sometimes at a quick, and sometimes at a slow rate, we followed the *Mercury*, another vessel belonging to the Company, which was pursuing the same course, and which was commanded by our commodore. Thus far nothing remarkable occurred in our voyage; but we were soon about to feel a part of the general convulsion. As I knew that in a passage of three, four, and perhaps six months, I should experience many tedious and dull moments, I took the precaution of furnishing myself with a few books before my departure. Among my travels, and works on natural history, I had the relation of M. De la Caille, which for amusement I read in preference to any other; but I remember that, having one day fallen upon a passage very anti-philanthropic, and full of fanaticism, I immediately threw down the book in a passion, with a resolution of perusing it no longer. The

passage is as follows: “ The custom of going
“ out to hunt runaway negroes, and those
“ who turn plunderers, as we hunt savage
“ animals, has nothing in it that can offend
“ the delicacy of an European. The moment
“ when men, useful in society, abandon their
“ situations, either from a spirit of libertinism
“ or of avarice, they degrade themselves be-
“ low brutes, and deserve the most rigorous
“ treatment.” Reflecting afterwards on the
humane, mild, and liberal character, which
has every where been bestowed upon this
learned man, I again took up his book, and
found these reflections: “ Laying prejudice aside,
“ which of the two is preferable—he who cul-
“ tivates the arts, and invents exceptions con-
“ trary to the rules of nature; or he who,
“ contented with the necessaries of life, regu-
“ lates his conduct according to the max-
“ ims of strict and scrupulous justice?” I then
recollected that the abbé De la Caille had been
snatched from letters and the sciences, before
he had time to put the last hand to his Journal;
and I imputed to the barbarous ignorance of
the editor that infamous paragraph, which
could in no manner have fallen from the pen
of

of a clergyman, a philosopher, and a man of letters.

On the first of February 1781, being three degrees north of the line, we were informed at break of day that a sail was seen in the horizon. At that time the Mercury was a great way ahead out of sight, and we were perfectly becalmed. In vain had we recourse to our spy-glasses; nor could we distinguish, until nine in the morning, that it was only a vessel of small size. Some believed it to be French; others maintained that it was English: each reasoned according to his own manner, and formed various conjectures, till its nearer approach should discover the truth. Some hours after we perceived that it was towed along by two boats, and that it was advancing towards us by the help of oars. As we then concluded that it was a vessel in distress, approaching to beg assistance, we suffered it to come up to us without interruption. About three in the afternoon, finding it close to us, we displayed our colours, and fired a gun; but we were very much surpris'd to receive a shot in our poop, which was followed by a whole broadside: the privateer at the same time hoisted the

English flag. In vain should I attempt to describe the stupefaction and astonishment of the whole crew upon this unforeseen event. In the vessel there was not perhaps one man who had ever been in an action. The captain and the officers, accustomed to pursue their voyage in profound peace, had never commanded in the like circumstances; one may therefore easily imagine what must have been the consternation of these poor people, unexpectedly attacked in this manner, and without having time to make any preparation, or even to barricade the quarter deck. Terror, and above all, confusion, were painted on their countenances. The officers bawled out as loud as they could; while the soldiers, all recruits, none of whom had ever loaded a musket, knew not what to answer, or whom to obey; in a word, at seven in the evening we had not wasted a single grain of powder. The privateer, in the mean time, kept up a constant fire; and, ordering us to strike, threatened to sink us if we carried our resistance any further. Our captain, in a convulsive agitation, continually cried out that he had not power to surrender at discretion; and that it would be necessary

cessary for that purpose to address the Mercury, the captain of which was his commodore. The poor man had entirely lost his senses.

A fresh breeze, as if by a miracle, at length springing up, the Mercury bore up to us, and asked our captain why he did not fire. The latter replied that he waited for the orders of his superior officer, and that it was the commodore's business to give the signal for battle; an excuse altogether ridiculous from the mouth of a *seaman*, attacked by a small vessel that mounted sixteen eight pounders, while he had thirty-two of a larger bore, several swivels, and three hundred men besides the ship's company.

The Mercury beginning to fire, we did the same; and, though the former was between us and the English, we still continued to discharge our broadsides. Our people, favoured by this disorder, had all got intoxicated: some ran backwards and forwards, without knowing whither they went; some staggered and jostled against each other; while others cried, wept, and swore, or went to conceal themselves in some secret corner. The chaplain himself, with a view no doubt to rouse his courage, was

not afraid of proceeding to the same excess. I saw him with a lanthorn in his hand go down to the fore magazine, which contained upwards of ten tons of gunpowder destined for Ceylon, and without the least precaution bring up a sufficiency to make cartridges; for it is to be remarked that none were ready prepared, nor was there ever a thought entertained of making such a provision.

After baffling all our manœuvres, and piercing us on all sides, the privateer bore away from us about eleven at night; and, though it soon got to a great distance, we still continued our fire. What a glorious moment for poltroons! How they then moved about with much alertness, and trod the deck with a firm step; raising their voices, and challenging the enemy whom they no longer heard! Their fear however was not as yet allayed, and no one ventured to retire to rest. Imitating the example set me, I passed the whole night in the open air, stretched out upon a bag between two rows of muskets; but I was every moment disturbed by the calling out of the sentinels, who were continually haunted by the noise of the English cannon: one may thence easily

easily form an idea of the disorder which prevailed during this affair. Next morning, when the gunners went to clean the guns, they found some of them filled to the mouth, and containing three charges, one above another, with as many bullets. In several of the muskets the balls were undermost: and I am fully persuaded that, without the assistance of the Mercury, we should have been taken; luckily however we escaped, after being heartily frightened. Nothing indeed but the phantom Terror could have thrown officers into such a consternation, that they suffered themselves to be cannonaded for four hours without daring to return a single shot. The English certainly must have believed that we had no guns, or that those which they saw were only of wood. The least resistance on our part would have made them soon sheer off, and without doubt they would have retired faster than they approached.

I cannot finish this sketch, which is truly worthy of the humorous pencil of Calot, without relating one circumstance more, which provokes a smile even yet whilst I am writing. Running up and down from the poop to the quarter deck, and from the quarter deck to
the

the cabin (for, bearing no commission in the ship, I had neither to give nor receive orders), I observed the keeper of the Company's papers faithfully seated, near the mysterious box, and ready to heave it out at the window on the slightest appearance of danger. This man at least was at his station, but terror had fixed him there much more than duty. The former had got entire possession of his senses: "Vaillant," cried he, "Vaillant, it is all over! Alas, my friend, we are ruined, we are undone!" I did every thing in my power to raise his spirits, and to induce him to change his air, that he might assume another countenance. In the mean time a bullet came whizzing through the cabin, with a horrid noise; and the poor man fell down motionless, like an unwieldy mass. Ignorant of the cause, I imagined he was dead; but by little and little he raised himself up, fetching several heavy sighs from the bottom of his breast. At this part of the scene, which was truly affecting, I could no longer keep my gravity, and I retired to give free vent to loud bursts of laughter.

Was it not shameful that men, formed by their condition, their age, and their experience,

to

to give examples of bravery and honour, should fail in so disgraceful a manner, at a time when in a minute only they might have dissipated every alarm, and made the paltry privateer which harassed us appear as nothing, whilst, on the contrary, children scarcely old enough to haul in a cable, shewed a thousand proofs of zeal, firmness, and intrepidity? What chiefly raised my indignation, and yet diverted me at the same time, was, that next morning they were fully persuaded they had sunk the English vessel, as it had disappeared. I could not without murmuring hear the reciprocal compliments they paid one another on account of the gallant manner in which they had defended their vessel the evening before. As for me, being firmly persuaded that the enemy had not received one of our shot, I could not help shewing a little pleasantry on the occasion; and telling the chief pilot, Van Groenen, that he behaved worse than any of the rest during the action, and that he then shewed the greatest share of pride and vanity. The sailors laughed in their sleeves, and the pilot perceived it; but the greater part of them not being able in conscience to stand up in his defence,

defence, he was obliged to be contented with the worthy testimony of his own self-love. To crown the affair, Engelbregt, the surgeon, who during the whole action had concealed himself in the hold, was commissioned, by virtue of his office, to keep a journal of this glorious engagement. I took the liberty of rallying the writer, as I had done the rest; but it was out of his power to be revenged, as I had the happiness of being in good health. This however was not the case with the pilot; he made himself ample amends for my pleasantry by rendering my situation as uncomfortable as he could during the remainder of the passage: but luckily it was not of long duration; and after this singular adventure we continued our voyage very happily, as we had always a fair wind. After a passage of three months and ten days we discovered the mountains of the Cape, which on account of the fineness of the weather made at that time a beautiful appearance. I took a view of them; and the same day, at three in the afternoon, we cast anchor in Table Bay.

The port-captain, Mr. Staring, immediately came on board, and confirmed the accounts we had

had

had heard of a declaration of war, which the colony had learned from a French frigate. Next morning I went on shore, and took the earliest opportunity of paying my respects to those gentlemen to whom I had been recommended, and of delivering my letters. I was received with much politeness, and even with distinction. Mr. Boers the fiscal, and Mr. Hacker, shewed me every possible mark of friendship; and I was sensible that I was not indebted for them to that ordinary politeness, which in other places substitutes unmeaning grimace for the noble desire of obliging one's fellow-creature, and which is only a perfidious art employed to deceive with more facility the credulous sincerity of a stranger. They offered me all those services which my recommendations, and their distinguished rank, gave me a title to expect. I depended upon them; for I knew that I had to do with Dutchmen.

I was impatient to be acquainted with this new country, to which I found myself transported as if in a dream. Every thing presented itself to my view in the most striking manner; and I already measured with my eyes those im-

menſe defarts into which I was going to penetrate.

Cape Town is ſituated on the declivity of the Table and Lion Hills. It forms an amphitheatre, which extends as far as the borders of the ſea. The ſtreets, though broad, are not commodious, becauſe they are ill paved. The houſes, which are almoſt all built in an uniform manner, are beautiful and ſpacious; but they are covered with reeds, to guard againſt thoſe accidents which might be occaſioned by heavy roofs during the time of hurricanes. The interior part of theſe houſes diſplays no marks of frivolous luxury; all the furniture is in a noble and ſimple taſte: no tapeſtries are ever ſeen in them; a few paintings and mirrors form their principal ornaments. The entrance to the city by the ſquare of the fort preſents a noble view, eſpecially as the greater part of the fine edifices have been erected there. On one ſide appears the Company's garden, in its full extent; on the other the fountains, the ſtreams of which flow down from the Table Hill through a fiſſure, which is perceived from the city and from the whole harbour. This water is excellent, and furniſhes abundance for the

con-

consumption of the inhabitants, as well as for supplying such vessels as touch here.

The men appeared to me to be in general well made, and the women to be pretty. I was surpris'd to see the latter dress with as much attention to the minutiaë of elegance as the ladies in France; but they have neither their manners nor graces. As the children are always suckled by female slaves, the familiarity which reigns between them has a great influence upon their manners and education. That of the men is still more neglected; if we except the children of the great, who are sent to Europe to be instructed. At the Cape, there are no other teachers of youth but writing-masters.

Almost all the ladies play on the harpsichord; this is their sole accomplishment. They love singing, and are remarkably fond of dancing; on this account it is rare not to see several balls every week. The officers of the ships which touch here, and which lie some time in the roads, often afford them an opportunity of indulging in this pleasure. Upon my arrival, the governor us'd to give a public ball every month, and the principal people of the town followed his example.

I was

I was astonished to find neither a coffee-house nor a tavern, in a place at which so many strangers arrive; but one may procure lodgings in every private house. The usual charge for bed and board is a dollar a day; which is dear enough, when we consider the cheapness of the productions of the country. During my residence here butchers meat was exceedingly cheap. I have seen thirteen pounds of mutton sold for about sixpence sterling, an ox for twelve or fifteen rixdollars*, ten quarters of corn for fourteen or fifteen, and so in proportion for other things. During the war the price of every commodity was raised to an exorbitant degree; and in the latter part of it forty-five rixdollars were given for a wretched bag of potatoes, and above two shillings sterling for a small cabbage. The charge for board, however, was not increased.

Fish are very abundant at the Cape. Among those most esteemed, the principal are the *roo-man*, a red fish found in the bay of Falso; and the *klepvis*, which has no scales, and which is caught on the rocks bordering the sea; the

* A rixdollar is about three shillings and nine pence sterling.

Steenbräafen, the *stompneus*, and some others. These excellent fish make a conspicuous figure at every good table. Oysters are very rare here, and none are found any where but in the bay of Falso. Eels however are still more uncommon. Crayfish I never saw; but the people eat sea ears, which are called *klepkoufen*.

To find game, one must go a great many leagues from the Cape. The most common kinds are the *steenbock*, the *duyker*, the *reebock*, the *gryfbock*, the *bontebock*, and all the different species of antelopes, concerning which I shall speak more at length in my description of quadrupedes. Hares, above all that small species called the *down hare*, are found here in great abundance, but they have not the flavour of ours.

Partridges also of different kinds, smaller or larger, and more or less delicious than those of Europe, are found here; but the quail and the snipe do not differ from ours. They are never seen here but in their passage.

Whatever the enthusiasts of the Cape may say, I am of opinion that our fruits transplanted thither have greatly degenerated. The grapes

alone appeared to me to be delicious; cherries are scarce and bad; pears and apples are not much better, and soon spoil. The citrons, however, and the oranges, especially that kind called *nareteyes*, are excellent: the figs are delicate and wholesome; but the small banana, or *pisang*, has a bad taste. Is it not astonishing that in so fine a country, and under so pure a sky, if we except a few dismal bays, no indigenous fruits are to be found? Asparagus and artichokes do not grow at the Cape, but all the other productions of our kitchen-gardens in Europe seem to be naturalized: one might enjoy them the whole year, did not the south-east wind, which prevails for three months, dry the earth to such a degree as to render it incapable of every kind of cultivation; it blows with such fury, that it is necessary, in order to preserve plants, to surround all the beds of a garden with close palisades made of young elms. The same method is pursued with respect to young trees; which, notwithstanding these precautions, never shoot forth branches on the windward side; and always incline to the other, which gives them a dismal appearance: in general, it is very difficult to rear them.

I have

I have often been a witness to the ravages occasioned by this wind. In the space of twenty-four hours the best stocked gardens appear as if dug up, and swept. This wind continues from January to April at this extremity of Africa, and extends even a great way into the country. In the course of my travels, it has sometimes overturned all my carriages; and no other alternative has been left me but to tie them to large bushes, to prevent them from being thrown topsyturvy.

At the Cape, this wind is announced by a small white cloud, which at first attaches itself to the summit of the Table Hill, on the side next to the Devil's Hill. The air then begins to become cooler; by and by the cloud increases, and expands till it grows so large that it covers the whole top of the mountain: it is then commonly said *that the mountain has put on its peruke*. The cloud, however, advances with a rapid motion, and hovers over the city: one would then say that it was about to be inundated and buried by a deluge; but, in proportion as it approaches the bottom of the mountain, it evaporates,

porates, and appears to be reduced to nothing. The heavens continue calm and serene, without any interruption; and the mountain alone, for a short moment, has a gloomy aspect, while it is deprived by that veil of the cheering presence of the sun.

I have spent whole mornings in examining this phenomenon, without being able to comprehend the cause of it; but afterwards, when I frequented the Bay of Falso, on the opposite side of the mountain, I have often enjoyed the pleasure of seeing its commencement and progress. The wind at first announces itself very feebly, carrying slowly along with it a kind of fog, which it seems to detach from the surface of the sea. This being accumulated, becomes condensed by the Table Hill towards the south, an obstacle which opposes it in its way; and in order to overcome it, gradually rolling over itself, it rises by its efforts to the summit, and displays to the town that white cloud which announces the wind, which has already blown for several hours, in the harbour and its environs, towards the face of the Table Hill.

The

The ordinary duration of this kind of storm is three days: sometimes it continues, without remission, for a much longer space of time; often, also, it ceases suddenly; and during the three months when it prevails, if it happen to cease several times in this manner, it is a sure sign that great sickness will follow.

Though this wind is not absolutely dangerous for ships, there have been more than one instance of its incommoding a great many. When it is too impetuous, from prudence, and to avoid even the fear of an accident, they make for the open sea; but, when it collects no fog, it is not perceived in the town, and blows only in the road. It is therefore the accumulation of the fog, which, moving forward with great velocity, occasions these dreadful hurricanes. Very often it is impossible to cross the streets; and, notwithstanding the care and attention with which doors and windows are shut, the dust penetrates even into trunks and chests of drawers. But, however inconvenient this wind may be, it still procures great advantages to the town; it frees it from mephitic vapours, occasioned by the filth which

is naturally collected on the borders of the sea, by that which the inhabitants throw into it, and still more by the bloody remains which the Company's butchers (who use neither the heads, feet, nor intestines of the animals they kill) throw away, and leave at the doors of their shops; where, being collected into heaps, they become corrupted, infect the air and the inhabitants, and add strength to those epidemical diseases too common at the Cape in the season when the south-east wind has not prevailed. The most dangerous and dreadful disorder here is the fore throat. People of the strongest constitutions often fall a sacrifice to it in three or four days: it is so violent, that they have scarcely time to counteract its effects by the assistance of medicine.

The small pox is another scourge in all the colonies here. Before the arrival of the Europeans, this distemper was not known; and since the Dutch have possessed the Cape, it has been within a hair's breadth of destruction. The first time of its appearance, more than two-thirds of the inhabitants perished. Its ravages, however, were still more destructive among the Hottentots; it appeared that
this

this malady attacked them sooner than others: at present they are very much subject to it.

As this distemper was brought to the Cape by some vessels from Europe, the Company's surgeons are always sent to examine with the utmost care such ships as arrive in the roads. On the least appearance of infection, the crew are rigorously interdicted from having any communication with the town or its inhabitants; and an embargo is laid on the goods, no part of which, however small, is suffered to be brought on shore. Were it discovered that a captain had found means to conceal this disorder on board of his ship, he and his officers would be immediately degraded, and condemned to pay a very heavy fine, if the vessel belonged to the Company. I include the *officers*; because, as each of them is obliged to answer for that part of the vessel which concerns him, it would not be possible to conceal the infection without the knowledge and unanimous consent of the crew. Did the ship belong to a foreign power, nothing could save it from confiscation.

The wet season begins generally towards the end of April: and the rains are more

abundant and more frequent in the town than any where else in the neighbourhood; which may be accounted for in the following manner:—At the Cape the north wind produces the same effect as the south-west does in France: it carries along with it the clouds, which, passing over the town, are stopped by their impulse against the Table, Devil, and Lyon Hills. Continual rains prevail then at the Cape; whilst the neighbouring parts, to the distance of two miles around, enjoy dry weather, and a sky perfectly serene. Sometimes they fall over the whole space contained between Table Bay and the Bay of Falso, to the east of that chain of enormous mountains which extends to the very extremity of Africa; whilst the eastern coast is clear and entirely free from clouds. This is but a faint picture of what happens on the Coromandel and Malabar coasts; except that this phenomenon is more wonderful here, because it is nearer, and much better perceived. Indeed, if two friends set out for the Bay of Falso, he who pursues his route on the eastern side of the mountain, carries his umbrella with him, to defend himself from the
rain;

rain ; but he who passes on the west side, takes it that he may shelter himself from the beams of the sun.

Strangers are generally well received at the Cape by those who are in the Company's service, and by some others who are private people ; but the English are adored, either on account of the similarity between the manners of the two nations, or of their very much affecting to be generous. It is an undoubted fact, that, whenever they arrive, every one is eager to offer them lodging. In less than eight days every thing becomes English in the house upon which they have fixed their choice ; and the master, the mistress, and even the children, soon assume their manners. At table, for example, the knife never fails to discharge the office of the fork.

Of all nations, the French are the least esteemed ; the citizens, above all, cannot endure them ; and this hatred is often carried so far, that I have heard some of the inhabitants say, they had much rather be taken by the English, than owe their safety to the arms of the French nation. Such conversation I at first considered as exaggeration ; and
thought,

thought, on the contrary, that these people formed to themselves an illusion at pleasure, to lessen in their own eyes the merit of those services which France then rendered them, and to get rid privately of the burden imposed on them by gratitude. However this may be, I am still of opinion that the French would have had great cause to complain of this colony, had not some people of distinction, whose prudence checked the murmurs of the populace, made some amends for the injustice of this enmity, by those obliging services and essential succours which the circumstances of the time rendered a part of their duty. These worthy men were not neglected by the French ministry, who honoured one of them with a letter of thanks from the sovereign. Who is there who has not had occasion to praise the noble and disinterested behaviour of Mr. Boers, the fiscal? and who is there who will not always preserve the remembrance of it in his heart? For my part, I render him the purest and the most sincere homage; and may this truth, which I cannot conceal, as much preserve the remembrance of his name as it will offend his modesty.

DEPARTURE

DEPARTURE FOR SALDANHA BAY.

THE news of a rupture between England and Holland, which had reached the Cape before our arrival—and those still more positive brought by us, that the enemy were exerting themselves with the utmost vigilance—made us apprehend that we should soon receive a visit from them. Government therefore imagining that no time ought to be lost, and that the ships which were lying in Table Bay should immediately take shelter in that of Saldanha, where they might be in more safety from the English, an order was given for that purpose to all the captains. This event seeming to favour my designs; I proposed to depart with the fleet; and Mr. Vangenep, who commanded the Mildelburg, having been so kind as to offer me the best accommodation on board his vessel, and every assistance necessary to enable me to reap benefit from my intended researches, as soon as we should arrive at the Bay, I accepted his friendship with equal readiness and gratitude. Ordering my
baggage,

baggage, therefore, to be embarked, we set sail on the 10th of May, in company with four other vessels; and next morning came to anchor in Saldanha.

This bay extends obliquely, towards the right of its mouth, about seven or eight leagues; and on the left of the entrance there is a small creek, called *Hoetjes Bay*, in which ten or twelve ships of war might anchor on a very good bottom: vessels of less burden might penetrate much farther, and even to the small isle of *Schaapen Eyland*, which would afford them very good shelter. The water found here is inferior, indeed, to that of the Cape, but during the bad monsoons it changes its nature, and becomes excellent. The peasants in the neighbourhood supply such ships as remain in the Bay with provisions of every kind, at a much cheaper rate than they could be procured at in the town; so that a vessel from Europe, outward bound, if prevented by the south-east wind, which is unfavourable for reaching Table Bay, may easily gain that of Saldanha, and be certain of finding every kind of refreshment in abundance. Near this place the company keep a post of
a few

a few men, under the command of a corporal; who, as soon as he perceives a vessel in the entrance of the Bay, sends an express by land, to inform the governor.

The *cachalot**, a kind of whale which the Dutch call *noord kaaper*, is always found in great plenty sporting in the basin. I have often fired balls at them, when they raised themselves upright above the surface of the water, but I never observed that they made the least impression. We found a prodigious number of rabbits in the small isle of *Schaa-pen Eyland*: it became our warren, and was an excellent resource for the seamen.

Game of all kinds is very abundant in the neighbourhood.—The principal are small antelopes, and all those of which I have already spoken. Partridges and hares are found here also; but the difficulty of continually mounting or descending among the sands with which this place is bordered, renders it a very fatiguing and laborious task to pursue them. Panthers are common here, but they

* The *cachalot* was generally known under the name of the spermaceti whale, till Mr. Pennant very properly made a distinction, by borrowing its name from the French. T.

are less ferocious than those of other parts of Africa; because, finding a ready supply of food in the game, they are never tormented by hunger.

Some days after my arrival, the commander of the soldiers stationed here having invited me to go on a hunting party with him, we set out next morning. Though we saw great plenty of game, we could not catch any thing; but towards evening, having accidentally separated, as if fate wished to familiarize me all of a sudden to those dangers which I had come so far in search of, I received, for the first time, a lesson I little expected, and which I am convinced would have made more than one brave citizen shudder.—The shots which I had fired here and there having roused a small antelope, my dog set out to pursue it; and, stopping at a very large bush, began to bark, running continually round it. Imagining that the antelope had retired thither, I ran up to it, in hopes of being able to kill it; and my presence and voice seemed to add greatly to the courage of my dog. I every moment expected that the antelope would appear; but, impatient at not

seeing it come forth, I penetrated into the heart of the thicket, beating on every side with my musket, to remove the branches which intercepted my passage. But words can hardly express the stupor and terror which froze the blood in my veins, when, having reached the centre of the bush, I saw, staring me in the face, a furious and monstrous panther: its attitude after it perceived me, its flaming eye-balls fixed upon me, its neck stretched out, its jaws half extended, and its hollow roaring, all seemed to announce my destruction. I indeed already believed that I was devoured; but the cool courage of my dog saved my life. By keeping the animal at bay, and making him hesitate between rage and fear, I had leisure to return softly to the borders of the thicket; whilst my admirable dog kept close to his master, resolved no doubt to perish along with him. When I had reached plain ground, I made towards the public road as soon as possible, casting every now and then a look behind me. Hearing at a distance several reports of a musket fired, at certain intervals, I concluded that they must proceed from my
companion,

companion, who was looking for me. As it was now night, I had no desire to rejoin him, and I suffered him to fire away at his pleasure; he however arrived, but very late. His surprise at seeing me perfectly safe and sound, was equal to his joy; for he confessed that, from the manner in which my dog barked, he judged I was engaged with an hyæna, or a tyger; and that, not hearing me return an answer when he fired his musket, he believed that I was torn to pieces. This adventure, which I related to him with all its particulars, made us both laugh heartily; but what he told me respecting the course I ought to have pursued in this rencontre, made me regret much that I did not fire upon the animal. Being as yet a novice in the country of these ferocious beasts, this was the first I had ever beheld so near, and I was altogether ignorant how to proceed with a panther. In this manner did I amuse my leisure hours, and prepare myself insensibly for greater dangers.

We often went to the Isle of Schaapen, to kill rabbits. In one of these excursions, which had before afforded us much pleasure, we had
a very

a very narrow escape from destruction. A whale rose all of a sudden near our boat, and filled us with great terror. It was so near us, that fearing lest, when it dived again, it might upset the boat, and sink it by its enormous weight, the sailors threw themselves into the sea; but the man at the helm turned the boat with so much expedition, that we escaped the monster. This animal, which darted at least twelve feet out of the water, besprinkled us all when it dived; and our boat received such a violent shock, that it was almost overwhelmed. Had it not been for the good conduct of our pilot, not one of us would have escaped death.

This whale is generally from sixty to eighty feet long, and sometimes more. It oftentimes emerges from the sea with half its body; and when this heavy mass falls back again, it makes a noise as loud as the report of a cannon.

One evening, while at supper, our vessel received a shock which made her reel in so extraordinary a manner, that, not knowing what might be the cause of it, we quitted the table with great precipitation, and ran upon

E

deck.

deck. The alarm became general throughout the crew. Vangenep believed that we had driven on our anchors, and that we were striking on some rock; but observing, by the position of the other ships, that we had not moved from our place, it was concluded that something else must be the cause of that extraordinary motion, and our consternation became redoubled. Having in vain attempted to discover from what it proceeded, we at length perceived a whale, which, rising before us, had, in diving again, passed between our two cables, which crossed one another. As the animal happened to be impeded by its tail, which is exceedingly broad, the violent efforts it made to disengage itself had shaken, and even then shook, our vessel. The people immediately jumped into the boats, and ran to their harpoons; but the darkness of the night unluckily prevented them from employing the necessary manœuvres to kill it; and the moment when the boats were approaching, it got itself disentangled. Every one was vexed at this disappointment. As for me, I regretted it much, until chance enabled me afterwards to get one into my power. When the danger

was

was past, we again sat down to table ; and, as a false alarm is always succeeded by the liveliest joy, we amused ourselves in jeering one another, and in reciprocally painting the different impressions which fear had made on each of the guests, without sparing any one.

The vigilance of Vangenep, and the promptitude with which he gave his orders on this occasion, were to me a certain evidence that he himself was under great uneasiness ; but he suffered nothing to appear : so true it is that the coolness of a commander conceals danger, and encourages those who are under him. Such ought to be the conduct of a good sea officer, even till the last moment. The consternation soon becomes general, when the crew observe any marks of terror imprinted on the countenance of their captain. I then recollected the proof which I had seen of this, passing the Line, when we shamefully suffered ourselves to be cannonaded by a petty privateer.

At the entrance of Saldanha Bay there is seen also a small isle, called *Dassen Eyland*, or the Isle of Marmots. I do not know if any of these animals were ever found here at any

former period, but I observed none. A tradition known to all travellers had informed me, that a Danish ship, being prevented by contrary winds from entering the roads at the Cape, took shelter in this bay; and that, after remaining here some time, the captain happening to die, his crew buried him in this small island, and erected a tomb to his memory.

Every time I passed this isle, in order to go to *Schaapen Eyland*, my ears were assailed by a hollow sound which had in it something very dismal and terrifying. Having mentioned it to my captain, he told me that, if I was desirous, and if it would give me the least pleasure, he would land there, especially as he himself wished to see the Danish tomb. Next morning therefore he gave orders for this purpose, and we set out.

In proportion as we approached, this hollow noise excited our curiosity the more, and the sea breaking with great violence against the rocks which form a rampart round this isle, still added to the murmuring sound, the cause of which we had not been able to discover.

Being at length arrived, we were obliged
to

to wade through the water; as the surf was so violent that the boat could not approach near enough the shore, where we were every moment covered with the spray: but, having at length clambered up the rocks, with no little difficulty and danger, we beheld such a spectacle as never, perhaps, appeared to the eye of mortal. All of a sudden there arose from the whole surface of the island an impenetrable cloud, which formed, at the distance of forty feet above our heads, an immense canopy, or rather a sky, composed of birds of every species, and of all colours: cormorants, sea-gulls, sea-swallows, pelicans, and I believe all the winged tribe of this part of Africa, were here assembled. All their voices mixed together, and modified according to their different kinds, formed such a horrid music, that I was every moment obliged to cover my head, to prevent it from being torn to pieces, and to give a little relief to my ears.

The alarm which we spread was so much the more general among these innumerable legions of birds, as we principally disturbed the females who were then sitting. They had nests, eggs, and young to defend. They

were like furious harpies let loose against us; and their cries rendered us almost deaf. They often flew so near us, that they flapped their wings in our faces; and, though we fired our pieces repeatedly, we were not able to frighten them: it seemed almost impossible to disperse this cloud. We could not move one step without crushing either their eggs or their young ones, so that the earth was entirely strewed with them.

The caverns and crevices of the rocks were inhabited by *phocæ* and *morses*, a kind of sea calves and sea lions. Among others, we killed one of the latter, which was of an immense size.

The smaller crevices served as places of retreat for penguins, which swarm here above every other kind. This bird, which is about two feet in length, does not carry its body in the same manner as others; it stands perpendicularly on its two feet, which gives it an air of gravity, so much the more ridiculous, as its wings, which have no feathers, hang carelessly down on each side: it never uses them but in swimming. As we advanced towards the middle of the island, we met innumerable

numerable troops of them. Standing firm and erect on their legs, these animals never deranged themselves in the least to let us pass; they more particularly surrounded the mausoleum, and seemed as if determined to prevent us from approaching it. All the environs were entirely beset with them. Nature had done more for the plain tomb of the poor Danish captain, than what the imagination of poets goes far in search of, and what the chisel of our artists executes at a great expence: the hideous owl, however well sculptured in our churches, has not half so dead and melancholy an air as the penguin. The mournful cries of this animal, mixed with those of the sea-calf, impressed on my mind a kind of gloom, which disposed me very much for the tender sensations of sadness and grief. I fixed my eyes for some time on this last asylum of an unfortunate traveller, and honoured his manes with the tribute of a sigh. This monument, erected no doubt in haste, presented nothing remarkable: it was of an oblong form, three feet in height; and constructed, without any mortar, of pieces of the rock which surrounds the island. I should

have been glad to search the interior part of this tomb, as it perhaps contained, along with the dismal remains of the captain, the history of his death, or some information respecting his family and country. Had I been alone, I should have ventured to disturb his ashes; but before Dutch sailors I was very cautious not even to propose it. Respect for the dead is among them carried to the greatest excess. With an unpleasent eye they would have beheld me lay my hands upon this solitary and peaceful tomb; and, as they are above all excessively superstitious, if any accident had afterwards befallen the ship, they would not have failed to ascribe the cause of it to me. I therefore prudently held my tongue; but, on quitting the island, I privately reserved to myself a right of some day returning to it.

We filled our boat with animals of all kinds which we had caught. The penguins were not forgotten; and we extracted abundance of oil from them for burning.

Our sailors also collected a prodigious quantity of eggs, which for several days supplied us with a nourishment that we found delicious, and which very seasonably relieved us
from

from the necessity of feeding upon the dry and too uniform provisions of the ship.

To this digression, which I consider as interesting, I shall add a few words respecting the sea lion and the sea calf. They have been mentioned by a multitude of authors under denominations so different, and with descriptions so erroneous, that nothing can indeed be comprehended from them. With regard to the first of these monsters, I can only say, that I never observed any of those trunks half a foot in length, which, as we are assured, hang from the upper jaw of the male. In respect to the second, which the Dutch have thus named, it is the same animal as that shewn three or four years ago in one of the shops of the *Palais-Royal*, and which the people who exhibited it called a *sea tyger*; while another of the same species was shewn, a few doors distant, under a different name. It was thus that, fifteen years ago, the simple credulous Parisians, who would not have gone a single step to see a camel, ran in crowds to the fair of St. Germain, to stare with wonder at the *gangan*, which was nothing else but a camel, thus named by an impostor. Such
deceptions

deceptions are less ludicrous, as they deserve to be condemned. They tend to propagate ignorance among the indolent inhabitants of the banks of the Seine, who, when they sacrifice their money to gratify vain curiosity, ought also to make it contribute towards their instruction.

We had been only three months in the bay, and I had already made myself acquainted with all the environs. I had been so attentive to my main object, that even in that short space of time I had formed a large and valuable collection of birds, shells, insects, madrepores, &c. But a fatal event, which took place soon after, had nearly deprived me of all the fruits of my labour, my researches, and my fatiguing excursions.

An express which we received over land from the Governor, informed us that Mr. Suffrein, after the affair of St. Jago, had arrived at the Cape, and that another French squadron was hourly expected. This express brought an order at the same time to the *Held-Woltemaade*, the vessel which had carried me from Europe, to depart immediately for Ceylon, to which place she was bound.

My

My poor old captain* set sail, therefore, in the beginning of August. This unlucky ship pursued me every where; and I believe it was written in the book of Fate, that she should not depart until after having ruined me. When I reflected on our ridiculous engagement with the privateer, I plainly foresaw that the *Held-Woltemaade* would be no sooner perceived by the English, than she would be taken; which indeed afterwards happened. Scarcely had she begun to proceed on her voyage, when she fell in with the squadron under the command of commodore Johnstone, to which she became an easy prey. This capture occasioned all our subsequent misfortunes. Through the shameful imprudence of the crew, Johnstone, having received what information he wished for, made directly towards us, and appeared at the mouth of the bay under French colours. Every one believed that the vessels they saw were the combined fleet which we expected; but a cutter, a little way ahead, having hoisted an English flag, fired a broadside at us, which was followed by a general discharge from all the rest

* Captain S — V —.

of the ships. Inferiority of number not permitting our people to maintain the conflict, no other resource was left us but to cut our cables, and to run our vessels ashore. We all, therefore, quitted them; and every one fought for safety by flight. Disorder and confusion being soon spread in every quarter, the unfortunate vessels were abandoned to the most dreadful pillage; every one endeavouring to carry off what he liked best. My captain set fire to his vessel, but the English arrived time enough to prevent the rest from being run ashore and burnt. The fear of being pursued, taken, or massacred by the enemy, made the sailors, with the utmost precipitation, pursue their way to the Cape. Twenty leagues of sand to traverse, before they could reach the town, had however discouraged many of them. These miserable people had so overloaded themselves, that they were under the necessity of leaving the half of their effects upon the road. They were seen lying every where around, and the different paths which they had taken were strewn with them. That day I was unluckily out on a hunting party; but having heard the noise of

4

the

the cannon, I naturally concluded that some entertainment was given by our squadron; and I hastened back to partake of it. When I arrived on the Downs, what a spectacle did I behold! The Mildelburg blew up, and in a moment the sea and the sky were filled with burning fragments. I had thus the cruel mortification of seeing my collections, my fortune, my projects, and all my hopes, rise to the middle regions, and evaporate into smoke.

The English, however, still continued to fire towards the Downs, and to pursue those stragglers whom avarice had detained too long aboard of our vessels. Of five prisoners, whom we had in our ship, four threw themselves into the waves, on seeing their country's flag, and got safe to their own fleet; the fifth preferred going on shore with our people. Seeing him upon the Downs, at the distance of ten or twelve paces from the spot where I stood, I immediately knew him; and whilst I was interrogating him in his own language, as well as I could, respecting the dreadful catastrophe which had taken place, a cannon
bullet,

bullet, which carried off his head, prevented me from receiving a reply. Another bullet, from the same broadside, did the same thing to a large dog, which appeared to be searching for its master, and which was running up to me with a wild and terrified look. The effects produced by these two bullets making me apprehensive of a third, I instantly quitted my station, and sought a place of shelter on the other side of the Downs.

The reader may easily imagine what my situation must have been after this adventure. Supposing that I did not choose to go to the Cape to beg pecuniary assistance, and to add to the number of the unhappy victims who had escaped from the fire and the sword of the enemy, insensible to this scene of horror, in which I ought not to have run any risque, since no advantage was to be expected from it; without title, without rank, and without commission; alone, absent from dear friends, who in imagination appeared before me; distant two thousand miles from my wife, my children, and my adopted country; in wild regions, without
the

the hopes of finding even a calm and safe retreat; having no other resources but my fusée, ten ducats in my purse, and the thin dress which I then wore—what course could I pursue, and what could I expect was to become of me? All these ideas rushed into my mind at once, and I felt the tears trickle down my cheeks. In this deplorable situation I turned my eyes towards the shore; but I there saw that the conquerors, who were pursuing the fugitives, would have my life in their power, and with one discharge of their muskets might free me from all my miseries. That moment, therefore, I formed a barbarous wish, and for the first time found my heart steeled with ferocity.

Recovering however the use of my reason, and reflecting upon my youth, which presented a consoling support in my own strength, I at last formed my resolution, and began to be a little easier respecting my fate.

It struck me in the mind that a planter, whom I had seen several times in my excursions, and who lived only at the distance of four leagues, would perhaps suffer me to reside at his house till I should receive assistance
from

from my family in Europe. I repaired, therefore, to his solitary habitation, and requested his friendship, whilst my misfortune was painted in my countenance. Upon hearing my request, the feeling Slaber stretched out his arms, and, seizing me by the hand, introduced me to his family. Next morning I imitated the persevering swallow, whose nest has been destroyed by some ruthless hand; and, not without sorrow, began to form a new collection.

Some days after we heard from the Cape, and learned that all the captains had been broke, except Vangenep, the only one who had blown up his ship; by which noble exploit I was almost ruined for ever.

On their departure for the bay, they were all ordered to blow up their ships, in case they should be attacked in a situation in which they could not defend themselves; and they had received a *boeker*, or small vessel, which drew little water, and which could penetrate into the bay much farther than any other, to serve as a general magazine, where they might preserve the ropes, sails, and rigging, of the whole fleet. This
part

part of the order was executed; and had the captain of the *Hoeker* set fire to it, as he was expressly commanded, he would have thrown the English into confusion, and perhaps reduced them to the necessity of abandoning our ships, from a want of the ropes necessary to carry them along with them. Being situated much nearer the bottom of the bay than the rest of the ships, whilst the English were keeping up a constant fire, and taking possession of them, he had much more time than was necessary to blow up his vessel. He not only neglected to make any disposition for this purpose; but he quitted the vessel, in order to save himself, on the appearance of a cutter that came to attack him: he did not even think of setting fire to it; and, by a contradiction almost inconceivable, and which seems nearly allied to madness, he burnt and reduced to ashes a beautiful habitation, situated at the extremity of the bay, in a place where the water was so shallow that even boats could scarcely approach it. On this account he was sued by Mr. Heufke, the proprietor, who was convinced that the captain would at least be obliged to make good the damages.

Vangenep was the only captain who, upon our arrival in the bay, above all things, feverishly began to make such preparations as were indispensably necessary for executing with rigor the general orders given to all. We had stuffed every part of our vessel with tow dipped in oil, with fagots, pitch, and combustible substances of every kind. His brother captains were therefore the less pardonable, as their remaining three months idle in this bay had afforded them sufficient leisure to be prepared. We arrived here on the 11th of May; and it was about the middle of August when this disaster happened.

The officers and sailors belonging to our ships, who had run to the town in a tumultuous manner, soon spread the news of our misfortune. The fiscal, not seeing me return with the rest, and hearing no news of me, made every possible enquiry, and at length discovered the retreat I had chosen. In a little time after he paid me a visit; and I sincerely regretted that I had so soon lost the confidence with which he had inspired me. I gave him an account of the dismal situation to which I was reduced by the
common

common misfortune, and of the dreadful distress into which I was plunged by the loss of all that I possessed in the world. I told him the resolution I had formed of remaining with honest Slaber until I should receive letters from my relations; and of endeavouring in the mean time to repair the loss of my collections, and to renew my researches in natural history. Mr. Boers heard me very calmly, and without interrupting me.—But why cannot I here perpetuate, in letters of gold, his tender reproaches, and the pressing invitations which he gave me to follow him? Without assuming any consequence, without haughtiness, and without the impertinent verbosity of our patrons in Europe, but with that open and sincere goodness of heart which surveys mankind with the eye of benevolence, and always considers those whom it protects as worthy of kindness—“ Sir,” said he, when I had ended my apology, “ never forget that you have been recommended to me. The instant I see you oppressed by misfortunes, is also the moment when I, in my turn, ought to merit the confidence of those friends who have depended upon

“ upon me : I will therefore never betray
“ them. My house, my table, and every as-
“ sistance I can give, are at your service.
“ Resume your courage ; make new prepa-
“ rations ; return to your original plan ; and
“ delay not to begin your intended travels,
“ by waiting for uncertain accounts from
“ Europe. I will supply you with whatever
“ is necessary for all your exigencies. Ac-
“ cept my offer—I must and I will have
“ it so.”

In such affecting language did this man of sensibility address me. A refusal would have hurt him too much ; and I accepted his kind offer. To this generous friend, therefore, was I indebted for the inestimable advantage of being able to begin my preparations for this expedition, to which I had long looked forward with pleasure, and to make provision for the ruinous expence with which it was likely to be attended. I cannot reflect upon his kindness without pleasure ; and I must ever entertain a grateful remembrance of it. With the like sensations I recal to view what Mr. Hacker, the lieutenant-governor, did for me, at the different times when I visited the Cape ;
and

and I must return thanks also to Mr. Gordon, the commander of the troops, for the services he had in his power to render me, and of which he was not sparing. His curious observations, published in Holland by Allaman, are esteemed; and I confess that I am particularly indebted to him for a number of valuable details, which would have perhaps escaped me, had it not been for the instructions and advice I received from him before my departure for the interior parts of the country, into which he himself had made some journeys.

I requested permission to pass two or three weeks more at Saldanha, in order that I might repair, if possible, a part of that loss which had been occasioned to me by the English. As I knew not whether I should afterwards have an opportunity of revisiting that fatal spot, I wished at least to procure such objects as I was well assured I could not find any where else. I knew the ground so well, and I had crossed it in so many directions, that, I may almost say, I had nothing to do but to lay my hand upon them; for, before the tragical accident which befel our vessels, I purchased a

horse, and hired a Hottentot, who conducted me to the most secret recesses. My host himself, as well as his two sons, assisted me greatly in my researches: on the least sign, they anticipated my wishes; and I might have almost said that they were under my command. I never beheld these worthy people without astonishment, mixed with admiration. Besides these, the good Slaber had also three daughters, whose persons and figure were really very engaging. The whole family made a noble appearance; they were all six feet in height.

The two weeks granted me by friendship, with so much difficulty, I improved to the best advantage; and my whole time was divided between shells, plants, and hunting: the latter, above all, which was my ruling passion, continually exposed me to the greatest dangers; and acquired me a reputation for intrepidity, which was spread to the distance of ten leagues around.

One evening, having returned very early, I found waiting for me at our house one of the inhabitants, named Smit, a person with whom I was not acquainted. He had come to
request

request our assistance against a panther, which, having for some time taken up its residence in that canton, carried off regularly, every night, some of the cattle; and, as his proposal gave me great pleasure, I readily agreed to it. Happy at having an opportunity of hunting this animal according to rule, I trusted I should be able to revenge myself for the terror which one of the same species had occasioned to me in Saldanha Bay.

Having agreed to set out next morning, we engaged some young men in the neighbourhood to join us. Observing that they did not consent with a good grace, I endeavoured to make the most timid ashamed; and this gave a kind of spur to the rest. When about to depart, we collected all the dogs we could find; each armed himself cap-a-pie; and, when properly equipped, we all separated, as if we had been about to give an assault. To enjoy a few hours rest, and prepare myself for the fatigues of the next day, I threw myself on my bed; but impatience and joy prevented me from closing my eye-lids. By the break of day I reached the plain, with my escort, where Smit and a few friends were

waiting for us. We amounted in all to eighteen hunters; our dogs formed a pack of the same number: and we learned that a panther had carried off a sheep during the night.

One of the barrels of my fufee was loaded with very large shot, and the other with small bullets; besides this, I had a carabine loaded with balls, which was carried by my Hottentot, who followed me. The country being very open, we observed only a few detached bushes here and there; but we were obliged to examine all those which we found in our way with great precaution.

After searching above an hour, we found the sheep, one half of which only had been devoured by the panther; and we were now certain, by this mark, that the animal was not far distant, and that it could not escape us. A few minutes after, indeed, our dogs, which till then had done nothing but range through the fields without any order, all of a sudden collected themselves; and, pressing together, rushed forwards two hundred paces from us, to a very large bush, where they began to bark and howl with all their might.

Dismounting from my horse, and running
towards

towards the bush, I took up my station upon a small eminence, at the distance of fifty paces; but, looking behind me, I observed dismay painted in the countenances of all my companions. John Slaber, one of my host's sons, a colossus six feet high, came, however, and stood close by me; saying that he would rather lose his life than desert me. By the palpitation of his heart, and his disordered looks, I concluded that the poor youth depended little on his own courage, and I perceived that he had need of some resolute person to revive his drooping spirits. Whatever might have been his terror, I am of opinion that he thought himself in more safety near me, than in the middle of his dastardly companions, whom we saw straggling through the plain, and keeping at a very respectful distance.

They had all cautioned me, in case I should get near enough to the animal to be heard, that I ought not to cry *saa, saa*, because these words would make the tiger furious; and that he would spring upon the person who had pronounced them sooner than upon any of the rest: but as I was in the open plain, and in a spot where I could not be encumbered, I repeatedly

peatedly cried out *saa, saa*, both to encourage the dogs, and to drive the animal from its hold ; but all my attempts were in vain : the animal was as much frightened as the dogs ; the former not daring to come forth, nor the latter to enter the bush. Among the dogs, however, I observed some mastiffs, on which I might have depended, had their strength been equal to their courage. My bitch alone, the smallest in the pack, always appeared at the head of the rest ; and alone penetrated a little way into the bush. As she knew my voice, she was a good deal animated, and became much fiercer on that account.

In the mean time the tiger set up a dreadful howling ; and I every moment imagined that I saw him springing forward. The dogs, on the least motion which he made, retreated with precipitation ; and scampered away as fast as their legs could carry them. Some musket shots, however, fired at random, at length determined the animal ; he instantly started up : and this sudden apparition was a signal for every body to decamp. John Slaber himself, who, formed like a Hercules, might have grappled with the animal, and strangled
him

him in his arms in a moment, became confused; and, being overcome by terror, fled towards the rest, and abandoned me to my fate. I was therefore left with no other attendant but my Hottentot; and the tiger, to gain another bush, passed at the distance of fifty paces, which gave us an opportunity of saluting him in his passage with three discharges of our muskets.

The bush in which he took shelter was much smaller, and neither so high nor so thick as that which he had quitted. Some traces of blood, which I observed, gave me reason to believe that I had wounded him; and the redoubled fury of the dogs convinced me that I was right in my conjecture. Part of my people then approached me; but the greater number of them had entirely disappeared.

We harassed the animal for above an hour more, and fired above forty shots into the bush, till at length being tired, and losing all patience at this sport, which produced nothing, I mounted my horse, and with great precaution went to the side opposite to the dogs; imagining that, while his attention was engaged

engaged in defending himself from them, I might easily surprize him behind. The event shewed that I was not deceived: I soon observed him squatted down, and making use of his fore paws to defend himself from my little bitch; for she approached so near him, continually barking, as almost to be within his reach. When I had taken a proper aim, I discharged my carabine, which I instantly dropped, in order that I might lay hold of my double-barrelled fuzee, which I carried at the bow of my faddle. This precaution, however, was needless; the animal did not appear; and, after I had fired, I saw nothing more of him. Though I was certain that I had hit him, it would have been highly imprudent to penetrate immediately into the thicket. Not hearing him, I supposed that he was dangerously wounded; and calling out to such of my brother sportsmen as were collected together—"My friends," said I, "let us all advance towards him, in a close line afront; if he is still alive, and makes his appearance, our pieces, discharged at once, must destroy him. What risque can we run?" Upon hearing these words, they all answered with

with one voice; but their answer was in the negative. In short, my proposal was relished by nobody. Fired with indignation at their timidity, "Friend," said I to my Hottentot, who was no less animated than his master, "the animal must either be dead, or extremely ill. Get on horseback, approach in the same manner as I did, and endeavour to discover in what situation he is: leave me to guard the entrance; and, if he attempts to escape, I hope I shall be able to dispatch him. We may complete the business, without the assistance of these poltroons." He had no sooner entered, than he called out to me, that he perceived the tiger extended at his length, without any apparent motion; and that he believed him to be dead. That he might, however, be sure of it, he fired one shot more; upon which I ran up, my whole body being agitated with gladness and exultation, while my courageous Hottentot shared in my transports. Joy having redoubled our strength, we dragged the animal to the open plain; and, when displayed to view, he appeared to be of an enormous size. I then began to take his dimensions

sions with the utmost exactness: I turned him over and over again, in every direction; and examined him with the greatest care. I surveyed him with a kind of pride. This was my first attempt; and the tiger, which was a male one, happened to be prodigiously large. From the extremity of his tail to the tip of his muzzle, he measured seven feet two inches; and in circumference two feet ten. I observed in him all the characters of the panther, so well described by Buffon; but in the settlements here he is known by no other name than that of the tiger. This appellation has become prevalent; though in all this part of Africa there are no real tigers, and though there is a very great difference between these two animals. The Hottentots call him *garou gama*; that is to say, the spotted lion.

In general, in the settlements near the Cape, the panther is much more dreaded than the lion. The latter never approaches without giving warning by dreadful roarings. He himself gives the signal for defence; as if he shewed greater confidence in his strength, or made his attack in a nobler manner. The other, on the contrary, unites treachery to ferocity;

ferocity; he approaches always without noise, glides along with great dexterity, seizes every advantage, and, springing upon his prey, carries it off before any one suspects that he is near.

I had afterwards frequent opportunities of seeing several of these animals; as well as of another species, called by the Dutch *luypar*, or leopard of the French; and a third species, still smaller, called the *cat tyger*, and by Buffon the *offelot*. I shall speak of these hereafter.

When I had finished my observations on my panther, and had drawn a figure of him, we began to take off his skin; and my timid companions approached gradually, when they saw us quietly at work. The reader may easily imagine how much they were ashamed, and what marks of confusion were displayed in their countenances. Ought they not to have blushed before a stranger, who, engaged for the first time with a ferocious animal, had remained firm, and shewn more courage than they, though they had all been born and educated, as one may say, amidst the monsters of Africa?

When I had flayed the animal, my Hot-

tentot wrapped himself up in the skin; and, after saluting my bold fellow-hunters, we returned to our lodgings.

We marched in triumph, escorted by several dogs, whose masters had first disappeared; but they would not approach near us. The tiger's skin struck them with great awe; and when my Hottentot, to terrify them more, turned round, making a kind of motion towards them, they retreated with as much precipitation as if the tiger had been at their heels; which afforded us no small diversion.

The particulars of this expedition were soon spread abroad. Every where throughout the country I was said to be a man of courage; and those even who had so *nobly* supported me began to be of the same opinion. I was requested also by a planter, whom I did not know, and who lived at the distance of four leagues, to assist his son to destroy a panther, which had committed several depredations in the neighbourhood.

As I had experienced so much danger in my first attempt, I was not very fond of engaging in a second. I therefore begged leave to be excused; being resolved never more to
expose

expose myself to the hazard of becoming a victim to such base desertion. "Go," said I to the messenger, "tell your master that I did not come to this country in order to exterminate the race of the tigers. I should be very ill repaid for my services, since none but poltroons would derive benefit from them. If chance expose me to such rencontres, I can combat alone; I want none of your assistance, and I will lend mine to nobody." Success had thus inflated my pride, and I imagined myself at least a second Theseus.

I had, however, very improperly confounded people whom I did not know, with those who had given me so much cause to complain of their conduct. This invitation had come from a person named Louis Karste, with whom I had afterwards an opportunity of being acquainted; and I repented that I had entertained so much prejudice against his children. They convinced me that they were incapable of behaving badly in the moment of danger; and I have been a witness to the effects of their courage.

The time to which I had limited myself,

when I left Mr. Boers, was now nearly elapsed; the season proper for undertaking my journey into the interior parts of the country was rapidly approaching; and I had great preparations to make. I therefore took leave of my good friend Slaber, and of all his family, whom I quitted with regret. Being freed from every care, embarrassment, and inquietude, I cast my eyes towards Saldanha Bay for the last time, and set out on my return to the Cape.

RETURN FROM SALDANHA BAY TO THE
CAPE.

MR. Boers was waiting for me; and as soon as I arrived, I took up my lodging in his house, where I found every thing that could flatter my wishes, and that friendly attention which the insolent pride of the rich sells at so dear a rate in other countries. He anticipated me with respect to the preparations necessary for my journey; and begged that I would begin to think of them. Upon this occasion

occasion I formed a more intimate connection with Mr. Gordon, the commander of the troops, who thought my intended enterprize rather too hazardous; especially at a time when the Caffres were at war with the Dutch planters, and consequently with the Hottentots: and, though he approved of my plan, he did not conceal the dangers to which I should be exposed in the execution of it. What he related concerning the risks which he had run in attempting a like project, served only to redouble my ardour: and I believed myself to be proof against all those misfortunes, which he took a pleasure in exhibiting to my view; and which, I must own, were far from being encouraging.

Whilst my people were employed in preparing my baggage, I examined, with particular attention, the city and its environs.

I several times visited the Table and Lion Mountains. Though the former, seen from the bay, seems to reach to the city, I found, however, that it was more than a league distant from it.

The bottom of this mountain is covered with a great number of fragments of rock;

which seem to have once formed a part of it, and to have been afterwards detached: the base consists of pure granite, and to the very top it appears to be alternately composed of horizontal strata of granite and of earth. According to the measurement given by M. de la Caille, it rises three thousand six hundred feet above the level of the sea. A person cannot ascend it but by the deep fissure, through which those streams flow that supply the fountains of the town with water; and even this route is very difficult, especially towards the top, where the fissure becomes much narrower, and rises almost perpendicularly. It is necessary to clamber above two hours, before one can reach the summit; where there is a very extensive plain, full of enormous rocks, heaped together in confusion, and interspersed with different kinds of shrubs. They resemble the ruins of an immense city. Time and conspiring elements seem to have destroyed their projecting parts, which gives them a very circular appearance. I have seen some pieces of quartz as round as those pebbles that are often found on the sand near the banks of rivers.

About

About the middle of the plain there is a muddy lake, from which those streams that reach the Cape flow through the fissure already mentioned. It is about three or four hundred paces in circumference: near it I killed a great many snipes. I could not discover whether this water was produced by a spring, or by the rains and the fogs; but I found that the mountain was intersected by a number of fissures, which, like so many aqueducts, in different places distribute the water from this basin, and fertilize the plantations scattered here and there at some distance near its bottom.

The Table Mountain is frequented by vultures of that species called *perchnopteros*; but the south-east wind often obliges them to quit the mountain: and it blows sometimes with such fury, that it throws them down into the streets at the Cape, where they are killed with sticks. Apes of the baboon kind, which the Dutch call *barwians*, are also found here. Every one knows that they are great thieves. They disperse themselves over the different plantations, and climb the garden walls, in order to steal fruit; but not with that preparation and

fine order which Kolben has made the subject of a childish and ridiculous tale. When the sky is pure and serene, the Piquet Mountains, which are thirty leagues distant, may be seen from the top of the Table Mountain: notwithstanding this distance, they seem to surpass the latter in height.

When people who for the first time visit this mountain, are engaged in the hollow fissure of which I have spoken, they think themselves attacked by a shower of rain: though the weather be fine, it really rains to them. This proceeds from the particles of water, which, dropping continually from the rocks above, and falling upon those below, are broken by their fall, and converted into a kind of rain, which becomes the finer the more one approaches the bottom of the mountain. This rain is always more abundant in the morning than at any other time of the day. The cause of this may be easily explained by the coolness and dews of the night.

In this hollow, at the distance of about one-third of its height from the top, there is a beautiful cascade, where the water falls over

a very broad rock. The inhabitants of the town sometimes walk as far as this fall; and, though the way is extremely rugged, even the ladies indulge themselves with a sight of this charming and picturesque scene, from a delightful point of view which begins in this spot.

It is very remarkable, that, in the warmest countries, the slaves kindle fires, in every place where they are at work, which serve to light their pipes, and to warm or cook their victuals. Those of the Cape, who are sent to cut wood for the use of their masters' families, go in search of it sometimes to the back of the Table Mountain. In the evening, when they quit their labour, if they neglect to extinguish these fires, they insensibly communicate themselves to the dry grass and roots in the neighbourhood. The flames then spread rapidly on every side, and soon reach deep valleys, where all the wood, both dry and green, without distinction, blazes forth with amazing fury; having the appearance of so many small volcanos, connected together by strings of fire. The flames rise in clouds of different shades, according as the caverns have a greater

or less depth ; night comes on ; and the city, the road, and the whole neighbourhood, enjoy a spectacle so much the more magnificent, as the cause of it is known ; and people are entirely free from that great terror which such a phenomenon would otherwise occasion : for the height and extent of this conflagration give to the mountain a more awful appearance than the lava does to Vesuvius, when it bursts forth with the greatest fury. I never saw this majestic illumination but once ; and I can say that it afforded me the utmost pleasure. All the inventions that might be made to direct ships at the distance of twenty leagues at sea, would never approach this Pharos, kindled accidentally by some small bushes, which a thoughtless negro has suffered to catch fire.

It is impossible to reach the Devil's Mountain by the Table Mountain, though it is a part which has been separated from it at the summit, either by fragments successively falling, or by earthquakes ; but one may easily arrive at the Lion Mountain, which, like the other, is also a part of the Table. It is however impracticable to get to its summit without a rope, by which one may clamber up, though
with

with considerable difficulty. From this eminence signals are made to ships at sea. There is always stationed here a person in the Company's service, whose business is to fire a cannon for every vessel that he sees; and, by a signal agreed on, the town knows in an instant whether the ship comes from India or Europe: but the same man, after he has distinguished the vessel's flag, is obliged to repair to the town, and give information of it to government. This employment is both laborious and cruel; for it often happens that the poor wretch must descend and go up in this manner four or five times a day, which oppresses him with fatigue: like many other things, it may be considered as a fault in the administration, against which every body's eyes are shut. The person whom I saw told me very coolly, that little notice was taken of this business: and I could easily believe it; for he was in a most deplorable situation. Though only thirty-five years of age, his knees and legs were become so stiff that he could not walk but with great pain.

I paid a visit also to the famous estate of Constantia, behind the Table Hill. This
vineyard

vineyard does not perhaps produce the tenth part of the wine which is sold under its name. At that time it belonged to Mr. Cloete. Some say that the first plants were brought thither from Burgundy, others from Madeira, and some from Persia. However this may be, it is certain that this wine is delicious when drank at the Cape; that it loses much by being transported; and that after five years it is worth nothing. On my arrival a *demi-haam*, that is to say, about twenty bottles, was sold from thirty-five to forty piastres; when I departed it was worth more than an hundred.

Close to Constantia is another vineyard, called the *Lesser Constantia*; but it is only within these seven years that it has begun to be held in the same esteem as the former. It has even sometimes happened that the produce of it has been sold for a larger sum than that of the other, at the Company's sales. As it is separated from the other only by a plain hedge, it is probable that there was formerly no difference between the wines but in the manner of preparing them.

All the space contained between the Bay
of

of Falso and the Table Bay, abounds with country seats and beautiful plantations, the owners of which confine themselves to the cultivation of pulse, fruits, and, above all, of vines. The most esteemed, and those which approach nearest to the wines of Constantia, are those of Becker and Hendrick. The wine-merchants at the Cape can prepare them in such a manner as to sell them for real Constantia wine. Besides these sweet wines, other settlements, such as the *Pearl*, *Stellembosch*, and *Dragestein*, produce some kinds of sack, which are highly valued. A wine is also made here that approaches near to Rota, to which the same name is given, and which I have found in every respect as good. Those who go to the Cape to purchase any of it, must apply to the planters themselves, in order to be well served; for the merchants are cheats, who, knowing that there is no guard, smoke the casks with sulphur, and fill them up with spirits, to make them keep as long as possible, in case they cannot get rid of them.

The ordinary wine of the country seldom makes its appearance at the tables of genteel people;

people; red wines, from Bourdeaux, are those generally drank; and those imported in the Dutch vessels are always preferred to the French wines, brought only in ill-conditioned casks, in which they never keep.

The average price of this wine is a florin the bottle: it however varies according to circumstances; I have seen it at three florins, and sometimes at twelve fous.

The beer brewed at the Cape is not much esteemed; but that of Europe is highly valued, and a great quantity of it is consumed. The price of it varies between twelve and twenty-four fous the bottle. In general, there is a great sale for liquors of every kind.

Those who enter a house are always presented with a *sopi*, that is to say, a glass of rack or gin, or rather of French brandy: gin, however, is the liquor most used in the morning. Before they sit down to table, etiquette requires also that they should be offered a *sopi*, or a little white wine, in which wormwood or aloes have been infused, in order to excite an appetite.

At table, people drink beer or wine indiscriminately.

criminally. When the deffert is finished, the ladies rise up, and retire to a neighbouring apartment, or to the landing place of the stairs. Pipes, tobacco, and more wine, are then brought for the gentlemen; whilst the ladies are regaled with coffee, Rhenish or Moselle wine sweetened with sugar, and other cordials. After this they form parties at play; and, when a lucky or interesting stroke takes place, it is always the signal, or a pretence, for a bumper extraordinary.

This manner of living is common in most families; with this difference, that those who are not rich use only wines of the country. The vanity of the inhabitants in this respect is however very ridiculous. One day, while passing along the street with Mr. Boers, he made me take notice of a man who was sitting on the stair before his house; and who, perceiving us near enough to be understood, called out to his slave, with as loud a voice as he could, to bring him some red wine. The fiscal assured me that this man had not a single drop of it in his possession, and that he had not perhaps drank of it ten times in his life. On this account, when

we

we had advanced a little farther, I turned round, and observed that his servant was pouring out beer to him.

The *Hout Bay*, or Wood Bay, takes its name from the brush wood which is found there: it produces no large trees, but only shrubs and bushes. This bay, which is small, and exposed to the west winds, is surrounded with rocks. Vessels seldom seek shelter in it, except they are suddenly overtaken by foul weather, and cannot possibly reach any other place. It lies two leagues to the south-west of the Cape.

The Bay of Falso, situated south-east of the Cape, is distant from it three leagues; but one must pass over a space equal to four, in order to arrive at the anchoring ground: the way to it is almost impassable. This spacious bay is capable of affording an asylum to a considerable number of vessels: it is here that those seek shelter which happen to be in Table Bay when the west wind begins to blow; and, for a contrary reason, when the south-east begins, these vessels return to their former station.

The commander at the Bay of Falso has
the

the rank of an *under merchant* : his salary is moderate ; but his place brings him a great deal, by the trade which he carries on with foreign vessels. When he purchases their goods, he sends them to the town to be resold ; and he sometimes finds means to dispose of them at five times their original value.

Close to the shore of the bay there are a great number of warehouses, in which provisions are deposited for the use of the East-India Company's ships. A very beautiful hospital has been likewise erected here for the crews, and a commodious house for the governor, who generally comes hither and spends a few days while the ships are lying in the bay. Commerce draws hither also a great number of individuals from the Cape, who furnish the officers with lodgings. Whilst the latter are here, the bay is extremely lively : but as soon as the season permits them to heave up their anchors, it becomes a desert ; every one decamps ; and its only inhabitants are a company of the garrison, who are relieved every two months. The vessels which arrive then, and have need of provisions,

provisions, are in a dismal situation; for it often happens that the warehouses have been so much drained, that it is found necessary to bring from the town in carts whatever these new comers are in want of: and the carriage of them generally costs an exorbitant price. The hire of a paltry cart is from twenty to thirty dollars a day; I have even known fifty paid for one: and it is to be observed, that they can make only one journey in the twenty-four hours.

The finest fish are caught here, and particularly the *rooman*, that gives its name to a rock in the neighbourhood of which it is found in great abundance. Oysters also are fished up here, but they are exceedingly scarce.

I must not omit to mention, that in the fields between the Bay of Falso and the Cape Town, but especially in the environs of Constantia and of *Niurwe-land*, is found that charming tree, called *silwer blaaderen**. It appears that, when Dr. Sparmann was at the Cape, this tree was not so abundant as at present; for the planters having remarked that it grew up very

* The *protea argentea* of the botanists.

fast, formed considerable plantations of it, which have become of great use to them for fuel. I observed that this tree was not to be met with in any other place of the colony, not even in the Nimiqua land, from which Mr. Sparmann very falsely supposes that it was brought. I can affirm that it does not grow there; and I never observed it in any of the other cantons into which I penetrated. For this reason I am of opinion that it was carried from some other part of Africa, or of the world; though M. Sonnerat, in his last voyage to the Indies, assures us that it is the only tree originally found at the Cape. It appears that this naturalist never saw the *mimosa nilotica*, which is very common there, as well as a number of other species much more valuable.

The plantations of *Stellembosch*, *Dragestein*, *Fransche-Hoeck*, *the Pearl*, and *Hottentot Holland*, are different cantons, situated between the Cape and that great chain of mountains perceived on the east. They supply all the rest with fruits and wine.

Stellembosch is a small village to which several of the inhabitants of the Cape have retired, and where they cultivate their land

themselves. It has a church, a minister, and a *land-rost*, or bailiff, who has the rank of an under merchant. He is a kind of fiscal, who judges in the first instance; but he cannot impose any fine above the sum of fifty rix-dollars: when the affair is greater, it must be brought before the proper fiscal.

The *Fransche-Hoeck*, or French Corner, is situated in an opening of the mountains between *Stellembosch* and *Dragestein*. It received its name from some refugees who went thither to cultivate the ground, about the end of the last century. The soil of it is good, and it produces plenty of corn and wine.—The best bread of all the colonies is eat here; but this is not owing to the corn being better than in any other place; it is because the French method introduced by the emigrants has been since preserved without alteration from father to son. This is all that remains of the remembrance of their ancient and cruel country. In this canton I found only one old man who spoke French: some families, however, still retain their primitive names, and write them as they were written formerly. I have known here *Malherbes*, *Dutoits*, *Retifs*, *Cochers*, and several

several others, whose names are familiar in France. Besides this, they may be distinguished from the other planters, who are almost all fair, by their brown hair, and the dark colour of their skin.

Hottentot Holland is thus named, because this canton, originally inhabited by the Hottentots, was first cultivated by the Dutch. It produces pulse, fruit, and corn. *Stellembosch* bounds it on the north, a chain of mountains on the east, the bay of Falso on the west, and on the south mountains in which there are still some inhabitants.

The first chain of mountains and hills observed from Table Bay, is named the Tyger Mountains. They are here and there interspersed with farms, which are excellent for producing corn. All these hills, when sown, present a noble view to the town in the time of harvest; and, on account of their fertility, they have been called the *granary* of the colony. The back part of these hills is also covered with corn farms; and this species of cultivation extends to a great distance. The plantations near the Cape are generally very valuable, on account of the facility with which

pulse, fruits, eggs, milk, and all other provisions absolutely necessary, can be transported thither, as there is always a sure and ready sale for them—an advantage which the other inhabitants do not enjoy, on account of their distance.

For twelve miles round the Cape, the planters no longer employ Hottentots, as they choose rather to purchase negroes, who are not so lazy, and on whose services they can more depend. The Hottentots, naturally careless and inconstant, often run away when they expect severe labour, and leave their masters in great embarrassment. The negroes desert also, with the vain hopes of procuring their liberty; but they are soon taken. On such occasions they are put into the hands of the bailiff of the canton; the proprietor claims them, and, on paying a small fee, they are restored, after receiving a slight correction; for there is no country in the world where slaves are treated with so much humanity as at the Cape.

The negroes of Mosambique, and those of Madagascar, are considered as the best labourers and the most affectionate to their masters. When they land at the Cape, they generally
cost

cost from an hundred and twenty to an hundred and fifty dollars each. The Indians are more particularly sought after, for serving in the house and in the town. Malays are also seen here, who are the most intelligent, and, at the same time, the most dangerous of slaves. To assassinate their master or mistress, is in their eyes but an ordinary attempt; and, in the five years which I resided in Africa, I have seen this crime often repeated. They march to the scaffold with the utmost calmness and indifference. I heard one of these wretches tell Mr. Boers, that he was happy in having committed his crime; that he was well aware to what kind of death he would be condemned; but that he ardently wished to see his life brought to a conclusion by it, as he would then soon return to his own country. I am astonished that so violent a prejudice does not cause still greater disasters.

The Creole slaves at the Cape are the most esteemed: they are always sold at double what is given for the rest; and when they are acquainted with a trade, their price becomes exorbitant. A cook, for example, costs from eight to twelve hundred rix-dollars, and others

in proportion to their talents. They are all properly clothed ; but they go barefooted, as a mark of slavery. That insolent set of domestics called *footmen*, are not to be seen at the Cape ; for pride and luxury have not yet introduced those idle and contemptible attendants, who in Europe line the anti-chambers of the rich, and who in their department exhibit every mark of impertinence.

On arriving at the Cape, one is astonished to see a multitude of slaves as white as Europeans ; but this astonishment ceases when it is known that the young negresses, if they are in the least handsome, have each a soldier of the garrison, with whom they may go and spend every Sunday in whatever manner they choose. Self-interest makes the masters wink at the irregularity of their slaves, because they expect to reap considerable profit from this licentious cohabitation.

There are some negresses, however, who are lawfully married, and negroes established in business, who form one body with the citizens. These are men, who, on account of their services, or from some other motives, have been made free. The facility with which they

they obtained their liberty formerly, gave rise to a multitude of abuses; because these people, when they grew old and infirm, or when they found themselves destitute of resources, and unable to procure a subsistence, became vagabonds and public robbers.

The criminals whom the government of Batavia often sends to the Cape, in order to get rid of them, preserve among these slaves a certain disorder, which will always afflict them. Those people, called *Bouginèes*, are Malays, all fishermen and harbourers of thieves: with respect to the latter article, their reputation is so well established, that search is always made first among them, when a slave has disappeared, or when effects have been stolen.

A master here seldom punishes his slaves himself; he generally commits them into the hands of the fiscal, who orders such correction as they have merited to be bestowed on them. If a master, however, who chooses to punish his slave, treats him with cruelty, the latter may lodge a complaint; and if he can afterwards bring certain proof of his being again used in the same manner, the fiscal obliges the proprietor to sell him. Should he severely

wound or kill him, he would be subjected to corporal punishment, or be banished to the isle of *Roben*. These wise laws certainly do great honour to the Dutch government; but how many means are there to elude them?

The isle of *Roben* is situated at the distance of two leagues in the sea, opposite to Table Bay, and in sight of the city. This island, which takes its name from the great number of sea-dogs found near it, is entirely flat, and of very small extent. It is the *Bicetre* of the Cape. It is under the care of a corporal, who has the title of commander; and the unfortunate wretches who are confined in it must every day deliver a certain quantity of limestone, which they dig from quarries. The rest of their time is employed in fishing, or in cultivating small gardens, for which they receive tobacco and some other indulgences. One cannot see without astonishment in what a vigorous manner greens of every kind grow here: cauliflowers above all attain to a monstrous size; and, though reared amidst sand, their delicacy still surpasses their bulk. Small violet figs, of an exquisite flavor, grow here also. The wells of this spot supply its inhabitants

bitants with water equally good as that of the Cape—a very extraordinary phenomenon in an island so small, and almost on a level with the sea.

I have seen here a great many black serpents four feet in length, but they are not venomous: abundance of partridges, and a still greater number of quails, are likewise found in this island. I have sometimes killed from fifty to sixty of these birds in a morning.

I must not here omit to mention an observation which concerns natural history. The quails of the isle of Roben and those of the Cape are absolutely the same species, without any difference which might render my assertion even doubtful; yet the quails of the Cape are birds of passage. This fact is well known: and though the distance from the isle of Roben to the continent be only two leagues, it is also certain that the quails there never emigrate. They are always equally abundant and found in every season. If I add likewise that the quails of Europe are exactly of the same species as these, must we not conclude that the former do not pass the sea, as has been hitherto pretended? Some travellers assert as a truth,
that

that they have observed them at sea: but this does not decide the question; for, at the distance of more than sixty leagues from the coast, I have shot starlings, chaffinches, linnets, and an owl. All these birds, which, as is well known, never pass the sea, had been undoubtedly driven from their course by some violent storm or hurricane; and I shall always believe that the case was the same with those quails which have been met at sea, until this part of the natural history of birds be better elucidated.

I am so much the more inclined to disbelieve that quails cross the sea, because they may go by land to Africa, and return by the same route. It is very probable that if those of the isle of Roben dare not venture to cross that small space of sea which separates them from the coast, much less will they dare to hazard a passage incomparably more considerable. The quail is a very heavy bird; and the smallness of its wings, in proportion to the weight of its body, is nowise suited to a long and continued flight. There is scarcely a sportsman who does not know by experience that, when he springs a quail three or four times successively, it is impossible for it to fly any more; and that, over-
come

come by fatigue, it suffers itself to be taken by the hand. The same thing happens to all other birds of this kind.

Besides the quail common to Europe and Africa, there is found at the Cape a bird much smaller, which is also called a quail, but very improperly; for it has only three toes on each foot, and all directed forwards; a mark sufficient to convince us that they ought not to be confounded. M. Sonnerat, in his *Voyage to India*, describes a bird of the same kind, which he calls the *three-toed quail*. M. Desfontaines mentions also, in his *Voyage to the Coasts of Barbary*, a like species approaching near to that of the Cape, of which it is doubtless a variety. I am acquainted with two others much larger, one of the island of Ceylon, and the other of Java: I shall give a description of them; and I think it will be necessary to make a new genus of them, to form the link of connection between the quail and the French field duck *, to which it has a great resemblance in the conformation of its toes. Government
sends

* In the original *cane petiere*. This bird, in Latin called *anas pratensis Galliae*, according to Bomare, is peculiar to France. It is about the size of a pheasant; its head resembles

sends every year a detachment to the isle of Roben, to kill sea cows and penguins, from which an oil is extracted, particularly from the latter: they furnish a great deal. At the point of Roben there is a small creek, in which a vessel might find shelter, if the south-east winds should prevent her from reaching the roads at the Cape.

When I quitted Europe to travel into Africa, it was not a part of my plan to enter into any detail respecting the manners and customs of the inhabitants of the Cape, much less respecting the political, civil, and military forms of its government. This is a subject, I confess, which engaged the least share of my attention, and which I should give an account of with the greatest reluctance, even were I

bles that of a quail, and its bill that of a hen. It has only three toes on each foot, like the bustard. Its head, back, and wings, are of a brownish yellow, diversified with black and white; its breast, belly, and thighs are of a paler colour, inclining to white; and its legs and feet are of an ash colour. It is accounted very delicious eating. See a description and figure of it in *Briffon's Ornithology*, under the name of the *lesser bustard*. See also *Dictionnaire Raisonné et Universel des Animaux*, under the articles *canard de près de France*, and *cane petiere*. T.

interested

interested in doing it. I have my own reasons for acting with this reserve, almost in the same manner as the reader may have his for being curious; and neither the reader nor I has any occasion to know them. However, from Kolben's reveries we may collect certain facts, which a residence of ten years at the Cape Town gave him an opportunity of observing. In this point he has not imposed so much on the public as may be imagined. His book, perhaps, contains truths which do not exist at present, and which have been considered as fables. But manners, characters, fashions, laws, and even empires, change in the course of time, and exhibit variations almost without number. They are like the features of a countenance disfigured by old age, and which has no resemblance to the portrait made from it when in the bloom of youth.

The case is not the same with what this sedentary traveller has boldly advanced respecting the Hottentots and their religious ceremonies. If what he describes ever existed, the spirit of philosophy, which imperiously hovers over Europe, must have a little cooled the scorching air of the African regions; for I observed there

no trace of religion, nothing even that approached the idea of an avenging and rewarding spirit. I lived long enough with them, and among them, in the bosom of their peaceful desarts; with these hardy people I have undertaken journeys to very remote parts of the country: but in no place did I perceive any thing resembling religion, any trace of what he tells us respecting their legislation and their funerals, or of what they practise at the birth of their male children; and nothing, in short, of what he is pleased to relate concerning the ridiculous and disgusting ceremony of their marriages.

The residence of this man at the Cape is not yet forgotten. It is well known that he never quitted the town; and yet he speaks with all the assurance of an eye witness. It cannot however be doubted, that, after an abode of ten years, having failed to accomplish what he was commissioned to do, he found it much easier and more convenient to collect all the tiplers of the colony; who, treating him with derision, whilst they were drinking his wine, dictated memoirs to him from tavern to tavern; tried who could relate to him the most absurd

2

and

and ridiculous anecdotes; and amused him with information until they had drained his bottles. In this manner are new discoveries made, and thus is the progress of the human mind enlarged!

JOURNEY TO THE EAST OF THE CAPE,
THROUGH THE COUNTRY OF NATAL
AND THAT OF CAFFRARIA.

THE different preparations for my journey being now completed, I ordered all the scattered provisions to be collected. They were indeed pretty considerable; for in that first effervescence which transports the imagination beyond the ordinary bounds, I neither knew nor had set myself any limits. Resolved, on the contrary, to proceed as far and as long as I possibly could, I knew not whether I should ever have it in my power to return; but I wished above all to guard against the disagreeable disappointment of being obliged to stop, through the want of things absolutely requisite. Even

to

to articles, therefore, the utility of which did not seem to have a direct object, I omitted nothing that might be necessary to my preservation in unforeseen circumstances; and I was always afraid that I should have occasion to reproach myself with some prejudicial neglect. The three months which I passed at the Cape and in the neighbourhood, after my return from Saldanha Bay, were scarcely sufficient for making all these preparations.

I had ordered two large four-wheeled waggon to be constructed, which were covered with double sail-cloth; and five large boxes, which exactly fitted the bottom of one of these carriages, and which could be opened without being displaced: over these was a large mattress, upon which I proposed to sleep during my journey, in case want of time or any other circumstance should prevent me from erecting tents. This mattress rolled back upon the last box, and it was there that I generally placed a cabinet or chest of drawers destined to receive insects, butterflies, and such tender objects as required great care and attention.

I had so perfectly succeeded in the construction of this box; my collections were preserved

erved there so well, and they arrived in such good condition, that, for the benefit of naturalists who study this branch, and who may be incited to undertake a like journey, I shall, with great pleasure, describe its form. It was about two feet and a half high, eighteen inches in depth, and as much in breadth. It was divided lengthwise into compartments, each containing a drawer, which rose only three inches from the bottom. These drawers placed thus vertically drew upwards, and were open below, so that, if violent jolts (and of these we had a good many) happened to detach any of the insects from their frames, they fell to the bottom of the box into the empty space of three inches, which I had reserved, and could in no wise hurt those that remained firm: a coat of virgin wax, two or three lines in thickness, melted with linseed oil, and applied to the bottom of the box, stopped its pores, and by its smell kept at a distance all destructive vermin.

This first waggon, which carried almost my whole arsenal, we called the *master waggon*. The compartments of one of the five boxes already mentioned were filled with large square

bottles, each containing five or six pounds of gunpowder. This was placed there only for immediate use, and to supply the wants of the moment. My general magazine was composed of several small barrels; and, to preserve them from fire or moisture, I rolled them up in sheep's skins newly flayed. This covering, when once dry, was absolutely impenetrable. Reckoning every thing, I could depend upon four or five hundred pounds of gunpowder, and two thousand, at least, of lead and tin, either unwrought or formed into shot and bullets. Of sixteen fuses I had twelve in one carriage: one of these, intended for large animals, such as the rhinoceros, the elephant, and the hippopotamus, carried a ball that weighed a quarter of a pound. Besides these I was provided with several pairs of double-barrelled pistols, a large cimeter, and a poniard. The second waggon exhibited in caricature the most curious apparatus perhaps ever seen; but it was no less valuable to me on that account. It was my kitchen. What delicious and peaceable repasts did I enjoy! and how dear to my heart the remembrance of my charming and domestic life still is! Whenever I am present at those dinners

ners of ceremony and constraint, where languor generally presides, the disgust which they occasion conveys me suddenly back to the gentle noise of our haltings, and presents to my imagination the most lively and variegated picture of my good Hottentots employed in preparing a dinner for their friend.

My kitchen utensils were far from being considerable. I had a gridiron, a frying pan, two large kettles, a cauldron, a few china plates and dishes, coffee-pots, tea-pots, cups, bowls, and some boilers. These were almost all the articles which composed my household furniture.

Besides these, for my own person, I had provided myself with linen of every kind, a large stock of white and candied sugar, coffee, tea, and a few pounds of chocolate.

As I conceived it would be necessary for me to supply the Hottentots who accompanied me with tobacco and strong liquors, I procured an ample abundance of the first article, and three casks of the latter. I carried with me also a large quantity of glass ware, toys, and other curiosities, to exchange with the natives as occasion might require, or to gain their friendship.

friendship. To all these things belonging to my caravan, I must still add a large and a small tent, instruments necessary for repairing my waggons, and for melting lead; a jack for raising burdens, a quantity of nails, iron in bars and in small pieces; pins, thread, needles, distilled liquors, &c. &c. Such was the cargo of my two carriages, which might weigh each nearly about two tons. I must not here forget to speak of my dressing box, which afforded me much amusement. Nothing could equal the astonishment which it occasioned to the savages in the remote parts of the country. I always made use of it in their presence; and their conversation on this subject has more than once prolonged my toilet, and procured me a very agreeable recreation.

My train was composed of thirty oxen; twenty for my two carriages, and ten more to relieve them; three hunters, nine dogs, and five Hottentots: but I afterwards considerably augmented the number of my animals and attendants. That of the latter amounted sometimes to forty. It increased or diminished according to the heat of my kitchen; for in the bosom of the African desarts, as in more refined countries, one meets with abundance
of

of agreeable parasites, whose countenances are seldom tinged with a blush: these, however, without being very burdensome, were not entirely useless to me, and they did not disappear when the cloth was removed.

My projected journey being known throughout all the Cape Town, when the time of my departure approached, I was strongly solicited by several people who wished to accompany me. Every one strove who should first offer his services: but these gentlemen and I reasoned in a very different manner. They imagined that their proposals would afford me great joy; and they could never believe that I intended to depart alone. Such an idea appeared to them to be altogether ridiculous; whilst I, on the contrary, considered it as the height of wisdom and prudence. I had been informed that, of all the expeditions set on foot by government for making discoveries in the interior parts of Africa, not one had succeeded. I knew likewise that a diversity of humours and characters could never conduce to the same end: in a word, that concord so necessary in a hazardous and new enterprize could not be preserved among men, where self-love would

make them flatter themselves with gaining an equal share in the honour of its success. After these reflections, I was unwilling to expose myself to the risk of losing the expences of my journey, and the fruits which I expected to derive from it. I wished to set out alone, and to be absolute master of myself: I therefore kept firm to my purpose; and, rejecting all these offers, cut short every proposal of the kind that was made to me. When my equipage was entirely ready, I took leave of my friends, and on the 18th of December 1781, at nine in the morning, I departed, escorting my convoy, myself on horseback. I did not intend to make a long march. According to the plan which I had laid down, I directed my course towards Hottentot Holland; and I stopped about evening at the bottom of those mountains by which it is bounded on the east side of the Cape.

Being then entirely abandoned to myself, and expecting no support or assistance but from my own arm, I returned, as I may say, to the primitive state of man; and breathed, for the first time in my life, the delicious and pure air of liberty.

I was now obliged to subject my operations,

as well as my people, to some order; for every thing depended on my commencement. Without being a deep philosopher, I was sufficiently acquainted with mankind to know that those who wish to be obeyed, must prescribe laws; and that, unless they are firm and vigilant over their actions, they can never flatter themselves with being able to rule those who are under them. I had to fear, every moment, that I should be abandoned by my attendants, or that my weakness would lead them into disorder. Without affectation, therefore, I pursued a prudent course, which I always followed afterwards; and no circumstance whatever made me relax, even for a single day, in my useful severity.

We had scarcely halted, when I gave orders for the cattle to be unyoked in my presence; and I sent my oxen to feed, under the care of two of my people, in whom I had observed more punctuality and intelligence. With the rest, I reviewed my carriages and effects, in order to see that nothing was deranged. I even examined the wheels and the harness: and I distributed to each his employment; and addressed them all, in a short

speech, respecting the different occupations which would be afterwards assigned to them. This procedure immediately inspired them with an idea that I was a careful and prudent man, and that the least remissness in their service could not escape me. After this ceremony, I mounted my horse, and went to reconnoitre the road on the mountain, which we were to traverse next day. On my return, I found my oxen in excellent condition, and a large fire burning, which I had ordered to be kindled. Having made a slight supper on the provisions which we had brought from the town, we retired to rest; I in my carriage, and my Hottentots under the canopy of heaven.

Next morning we yoked our oxen before day, and prepared ourselves for attempting the mountain; but we could not reach its summit without being in great danger of breaking our carriages, and laming our oxen. The road is cut out even, on the back part of it; but it is so steep, and so rough with splinters of rock, that I am astonished government should have so much neglected the only route by which the inhabitants of these cantons can

go to the Cape. On the top of the mountain there is a noble and most extensive prospect, including all the plantations scattered throughout a vast valley, inclosed by a chain of other mountains, and the sea.

We were here obliged to unyoke our oxen, to suffer them to take breath, and to give them some hours repose. Uneasy respecting the descent, and desirous to know the safest method of gaining the plain country, I employed this short interval in taking a survey of the neighbourhood. Having observed that a gradual and gentle declivity on the back of the mountain would conduct us, without danger, to that charming country, I was entirely freed from my embarrassment; and returning soon after to my caravan, we resumed our march. The road, indeed, was very convenient for our carriages, and did not in the least impede their motion: we descended, therefore, with a pleasure and tranquillity equal to the pain and inquietude which we had felt on the other side. As savage animals seldom make their appearance in these cantons, having nothing to fear, and no precautions to take, we continued our march till ten at night, and arrived

rived at the river *Palmit*, thus named by the Dutch, on account of the great quantity of reeds which grow on its banks.

When we awoke next morning, we sought for our oxen, but in vain; they had all disappeared: not being yet accustomed to lie down by our carriages during the night, they had dispersed themselves on all sides. My people, however, went in quest of them; but it was a long time before they could get them collected together, and we were not in a condition to depart before nine. About eleven, observing a plantation at the distance of fifty paces from me, I advanced towards it; when the owner, who doubtless had seen my caravan, came to meet me. As soon as he perceived me, he made himself known; and I found that he was the same person who, at the Cape, had sold me my *master waggon*, with the five pair of oxen that drew it. On this occasion, I could not help stopping and accepting a dinner, which he offered me in the most pressing manner: I complied with his request especially, when he confessed to me, that, having learned at the Cape the day of my departure, and the route I intended to pursue, he had
taken

taken the start of me with his people, and made preparations to entertain me at his house. I ordered my oxen to be unyoked on the spot where he had met me; and going along with him, was received very politely by his wife and two pretty daughters, who composed his whole family. Till the hour of dinner, we employed our time in viewing his estate; and, during our repast, he did not fail to enlarge upon the excellence of the waggon which I had purchased from him. I was even obliged to listen to a long history, in which he recited all the good qualities of each of the oxen that drew it. I must, indeed, do him the justice to say that he did not deceive me: I have since found, and, I must allow, much to Mr. Smit's honour, that these oxen were the best I ever employed, and the most to be depended upon; and that, in my extraordinary courses, and the most dangerous passes, his waggon, solidly constructed, held out to the very last.

Notwithstanding the entreaties of this good family, who invited me to spend the night with them, I departed as soon as we had dined; and, after some hours march, we crossed

the river *Bot*, and the whole canton called *Ouwe-Hoeck*. I wished to make up for the time I had lost at dinner; and, on that account, it was eleven at night when we halted, near a small pond of brackish water.

Scarcely had the sun appeared above the horizon, when we proceeded on our journey; and, in the morning, we stopped at the house of Francis Bathenos, who sent me a loaf which I requested from him, and for which he refused payment. He sent to request that I would alight; but I refused, not wishing in any manner to lose my time in paying visits. In this country I every moment met with prodigious flocks of that kind of antelopes which the planters call *reebock*: it is as yet very little known: Mr. Sparmann only makes mention of it; and the name of this animal, in the French edition of his work, is badly translated; for *reebock* does not signify *red goat*, but *goat of the sea shore*.—The noon-tide heat became so excessive, that I was obliged to stop; and, whilst my people and cattle were breathing a little, I made a small excursion, in which I killed one of these reebocks: it was a male; its colour, in general, was a delicate

delicate grey, darker upon the back than the sides, and its belly was white: it was not absolutely reddish, nor were its horns more than five or six inches in length. Doctor Sparrmann, who says he describes them only from memory, must have been deceived, when he gives them a foot in length. The description and figure of this antelope will be found in my Account of the Quadrupedes of Africa. In returning to my people, we stopped a little time, to eat a few steaks from the animal I had killed; and, in the space of four leagues, which we travelled, in order to find a convenient spot for encamping, we saw near us, on all sides, flocks of antelopes, bontebocks*, and bubales†, together with some zebras, &c. &c. and several ostriches. The variety and gait of these large flocks were very amusing, and worthy of engaging the attention of a naturalist. My dogs pursued with great keenness all these different species, which crossed each other as they fled, and sometimes found themselves all promiscuously collected into one body, according as the dogs attacked

* The *antilope scripta* of Mr. Pallas.

† The *antilope bubalis*.

them.

them. This confusion, like the machinery of the stage, scarcely required a moment to be remedied; I recalled my dogs, and each individual instantly returned to its flock, which kept at a certain distance from the rest. This spectacle will be more easily conceived, if one thinks of the month of May in Holland: nothing is then to be seen but innumerable flocks of cattle, separated from each other with a kind of symmetry, and which are never confounded together. These animals were so full of curiosity, and so tame, that, had it not been for my dogs, I might have killed a great number of them from my carriage; but the approach of my dogs put them all to flight.

A curiosity equally familiar seems to characterize all animals with horns, and particularly antelopes; there were none but zebras and ostriches which kept at a great distance.

Being only four or five leagues from some warm baths, much boasted of by the inhabitants of the Cape, I was desirous of seeing them; though I was, at the same time, afraid that my journey would be retarded. To gain on the one hand what I was about to lose on the other, I departed earlier than usual; and

at

at ten in the morning we found ourselves close to them. This spring of warm mineral water, distant from the Cape about thirty leagues, is generally held in great estimation. Government have caused a very spacious and convenient building to be erected here, for the use of such invalids as may be desirous of bathing: their lodging, indeed, costs them nothing; but these invalids are obliged to furnish their own necessaries, which is not easily done in a country that affords very few resources. In this place there are two separate baths, one for the blacks, and another for the whites. Near this also is situated that mountain, called the Tower of Babel, the height of which has been so much exaggerated by Kolben: it is far from approaching that of the Table Mount. Around this place, the company, under the auspices of a corporal, have established several repositories, where they feed all those cattle that are necessary for supplying their vessels with provisions.

Next morning I passed the river *Steenbock*, not far from which is a beautiful seat belonging to a widow named *Wissel*; and after dinner, before I crossed a second river called *Sonder*
End,

End, I saw in my way the *Zicken-Huys*. This is a repository or rather hospital for the diseased oxen belonging to the company: they are here cured sometimes; but this establishment is attended with one utility, which is that these animals cannot convey their infection to those that are well, and which are separated from them.

I had resolved to travel during the whole night; but I was obliged to halt at nine in the evening, in the valley of *Soete-Melck*, as a boggy marsh impeded us in our way: it would not have been prudent to entangle ourselves in it whilst it was dark.

Early in the morning I observed at a little distance a beautiful house, which was a post belonging to the company, and commanded by Mr. Martines. As I was acquainted with him, having been several times in his company at the fiscal's house at the Cape, I paid him a visit. Like all the rest of the planters, he invited me to spend a few days with him; but my impatience to proceed on my journey made me reject his kind offer. About noon I passed near a small horde of Hottentots, who appeared to me so miserable and wretched,
that

that I gave them a few presents. I found no cattle of any kind among them ; they subsisted entirely by what they could procure for their labour in the neighbouring plantations. I invited several of them to follow me, and promised to pay them well on their return ; but they could not be prevailed on, until I had assured them that I would give them a quantity of tobacco, sufficient to serve them on the road. They then promised that they would be at my service.—Having passed the night at *Tiger-Hoec*, or the tigers corner, I waited for my recruits till nine in the morning ; but at the moment when I began to despair of them, and to think of continuing my journey, they arrived, to the number of three, with their arms and baggage. This small reinforcement gave me great pleasure : they mixed with the rest ; and, having soon got acquainted, I put off my departure till the afternoon, resolving in the meantime to make a little tour in the neighbourhood. One of the new comers asked permission to follow me, assuring me that he was an excellent huntsman ; but as I had carried with me from Europe that prejudice which people generally have against those who found their

own praises, I had no great confidence in the talents of my Hottentot. I however ordered a fufee to be given to him ; and we fet out together.

We foon faw fome flocks of antelopes, with which the whole country was covered, but they always kept out of our reach : at length, after a good deal of running, my hunter ftopping all of a fudden, called out to me that he perceived a *blaw-bock*, a blue goat, fquatted down. I immediately turned my eyes towards the place which he pointed out, but I obferved nothing. He then begged me to remain quiet, and not to move, affuring me that he would foon put me in poffeffion of the animal. He immediately made a turn round, creeping on his knees, whilft I watched him clofely ; but I could not comprehend the meaning of this ftratagem, which to me was entirely new. Soon after the animal rofe up, and began to browse quietly, without removing from the place. I at firft took it for a white horfe ; for from the place in which I flood it appeared to me to be wholly of that colour, having never before that period feen an antelope of this fpecies : but I was foon undeceived when I obferved its horns.

horns. My Hottentot in the mean time continued to drag himself along on his belly; and approaching quickly near enough to take aim, fired at it, upon which it instantly fell.— I was so overjoyed that I made only one step to the place; and I had the pleasure of contemplating at my leisure the most curious and beautiful species of antelope that Africa produces. For this service I assured my Hottentot that I would reward him generously when I returned to our encampment. The intelligence of this man, and the various methods he employed to surprize the animal, rendered his service of great value and importance: on this account I resolved to gain him over by all those allurements which seduce the Hottentots. I began by giving him a large provision of tobacco; and to this present I added some tinder, a tinder-box, and one of my best knives: he immediately made use of the latter, and began to flay the animal with the same dexterity as he had fired. The skin I carefully preserved.

This antelope has been described by Pennant under the name of the *blue antelope*, and by Buffon under that of the *tseiran*. The latter has given the figure of a part of its horns: it

is rare, and very little known. During my residence in Africa, I never saw but two of these antelopes, and another which was brought to the governor some years before, when I lived at the Cape Town. These, as well as mine, came from the valley of *Soete-Melk*, the only canton which they inhabit. I was assured that I should see some of them in the country of the great Nimiquas; but notwithstanding this information, and all my researches, I found myself disappointed: all the savages affirmed that they were not acquainted with them. I was assured also that the female had horns as well as the male; but I can say nothing on that head, since the three which I saw were all of the same kind.

The principal colour of this animal is a faint blue, inclining to grey; but the belly and the interior part of the legs, throughout their whole length, are as white as snow; the head, above all, is beautifully spotted with white.

I did not observe, as Dr. Sparmann says, that this antelope when alive resembles blue velvet, and that when dead the skin changes its colour; living or dead it appeared to me always alike. The tints of that which I
brought

brought with me never varied. I saw another at Amsterdam, which had been kept for more than fifteen years. The case was the same with regard to that belonging to the governor of the Cape: it was still fresher than mine, but in other respects they were equal. I cannot help adding here, that I never found this animal properly represented in any of the engravings or figures which I have hitherto seen of it. In my description of African quadrupedes, I shall give one from a drawing which I made of this upon the spot, before it was skinned.

Next morning, the weather being cool and cloudy, we marched six hours in order to reach the borders of a very large pond abounding with small tortoises, of which we caught about twenty; we broiled them all in the same manner on the coals, and found them excellent. They were from seven to eight inches in length, and about four in breadth. The shell on the back was of a whitish grey colour, inclining a little to yellow: when alive, they had a disagreeable smell; but by roasting them it was entirely destroyed.

It is very remarkable that, when the waters are dried up by excessive heat, the tortoises, which always seek for moisture, bury themselves under the earth in proportion as the surface of it becomes dry; to find them, it is then sufficient to dig to a considerable depth, in the spot where they have concealed themselves. They generally remain as if asleep; and never awaken, or make their appearance, until the rainy season has supplied the ponds and small lakes with water, on the borders of which they deposit their eggs, where they continue exposed to the air; they are as large as those of a pigeon: they leave to the heat and the sun the care of hatching them. These eggs have an excellent taste; the white, which never becomes hard by the force of fire, preserves the transparency of a blueish jelly.

I do not know whether this instinct be common to every species of water tortoises, and whether they all employ the same means; but this I can assert, that every time, during the great droughts, when I wished to procure any of them, by digging in those places where there had been water, I always found as many as I had occasion for,

This

This method of fishing, or whatever else it may be called, was not new to me: for at Surinam a stratagem of the same kind is employed to catch two species of fish, which bury themselves also; and which are called, one the *varappe*, and the other the *gorret* or the *ke-vikwi*.

Our waggons being stationed on the banks of this pond, frightened a great number of antelopes which were coming to drink, and prevented them from approaching us.

The bontebocks, above all, appeared in flocks of two thousand at least. I am persuaded that this day, including bubales, antelopes of all kinds, zebras, and ostriches, I had before my eyes at one time more than four or five thousand animals: of all these, however, I wished only for an ostrich; but I could find no method of gratifying my desire, for these birds would not suffer us to approach them. The other species, though rather timid, were from time to time within reach of a shot; but I was unwilling to fire for the mere pleasure of destroying them: we had abundance of provisions; and my powder, besides, was too valuable.

Between us and Swellendam we had now only two rivers: *Breede-Rivier*, the broad river; and *Klip-Rivier*, or the river of flints. I was extremely desirous of being acquainted with this spot, which is the principal place of the colony: I proposed to spend a few days in it, and to survey all these animals attentively at my leisure. We arrived there the day following, very early.

Of all the rivers which we had crossed, the most considerable were *Diep-Rivier* and *Breede-Rivier*. The rest are scarcely rivulets, during the great heats; but in the rainy season they are soon converted into impetuous torrents, which cut off all communication with the Cape Town.

At Swellendam I remained several days with Mr. Ryneveld, the bailiff of the place, who treated me with great civility and politeness. Finding my two carriages overloaded, and too heavy, I was sensible that it would be necessary for me to procure a third. My host was kind enough to order one with two wheels to be constructed for me; and, when I departed, he supplied me with a large quantity of fresh provisions.

I re-

I recruited a few more Hottentots; and I purchased several oxen and goats; together with a cow, to afford me milk; and a cock, which I intended to be my natural alarum in the morning.

There is not a single naturalist, nor even a clown, in the country, who does not know that a cock crows regularly during night at the same hour, and that he takes care to proclaim the return of day.

I must here observe that some have pretended, in more than one public paper, to ridicule this precaution (which procured me pleasure, if it did not afford me a resource in the moment of necessity), by making me utter absurd speeches, which agree very ill with the emphasis of the narrator. When they assured the public that I expected to supply by a cock the place of my watch, should it happen to be deranged, they ought also to have informed the incredulous, at least, in what manner a cock can ever become a watch. In the same style it has been said, that, meeting a lion for the first time, “ *we measured each other with a haughty look*, and suffered each other to pass
“ quietly;

“ quietly ; both satisfied with our noble countenances.”

But leaving these poetical romances, I can say that my hopes in my cock were not disappointed. This animal, which always roosted either on my tent or my waggon, regularly announced to me the appearance of aurora. He soon grew tame ; never quitted the neighbourhood of my camp ; and, if the want of food induced him to go any distance, he always returned on the approach of night. Sometimes he was pursued by small quadrupeds of the weasel or polecat kind ; and I have seen him, half flying and half running, retreat towards us, making as loud a noise as he could : but on such occasions some of my people or dogs never failed to go speedily to his assistance.

An animal that rendered me more essential services ; which, by its useful presence, suspended and even dissipated certain bitter and disagreeable reflections that occurred to my mind ; which, by its simple and striking instinct, seemed to anticipate my efforts ; and which comforted me in my languor—was an ape, of that kind so common

mon at the Cape, under the name of *barwians*. As it was extremely familiar, and attached itself to me in a particular manner, I made it my taster. When we found any fruit or roots unknown to my Hottentots, we never touched them until my dear Kees had first tasted them; if it refused them, we judged them to be either disagreeable or dangerous, and threw them away.

An ape has one peculiarity which distinguishes it from all other animals, and brings it very near to man. It has received from nature an equal share of greediness and curiosity: though destitute of appetite, it tastes without necessity every kind of food that is offered to it; and always lays its paw upon every thing that it finds within its reach.

There was another quality in Kees which I valued still more. He was my best guardian; and, whether by night or by day, he instantly awoke on the least sign of danger. By his cries, and other expressions of fear, we were always informed of the approach of an enemy before my dogs could discover it: they were so accustomed to his voice, that they slept in perfect security, and never went the rounds; on which

account I was extremely angry, fearing that I should no longer find that indispensable assistance which I had a right to expect, if any disorder or fatal accident should deprive me of my faithful guardian. However, when he had once given the alarm, they all stopped to watch the signal; and on the least motion of his eyes, or shaking of his head, I have seen them all rush forwards, and scamper away in that quarter to which they observed his looks directed.

I often carried him along with me in my hunting excursions; during which he would amuse himself in climbing up trees, in order to search for gum, which he was remarkably fond of. Sometimes he discovered honey in the crevices of rocks, or in hollow trees; but when he found nothing, when fatigue and exercise had whetted his appetite, and when he began to be seriously oppressed by hunger, a scene took place which to me appeared extremely comic. When he could not find gum and honey, he searched for roots, and ate them with much relish; especially one of a particular species, which, unfortunately for me, I found excellent and very refreshing, and which I greatly wished to partake of. But Kees was
very

very cunning : when he found any of this root, if I was not near him to claim my part, he made great haste to devour it, having his eyes all the time directed towards me. By the distance I had to go before I could approach him, he judged of the time that he had to eat it alone ; and I indeed arrived too late. Sometimes, however, when he was deceived in his calculation, and when I came upon him sooner than he expected, he instantly endeavoured to conceal the morsels from me: but, by means of a blow well applied, I obliged him to restore the theft ; and in my turn becoming master of the envied prey, he was obliged to receive laws from the stronger party. Kees entertained no hatred or rancour ; and I easily made him comprehend how detestable that base selfishness was, of which he had set me an example.

To tear up these roots, he pursued a very ingenious method, which afforded me much amusement. He laid hold of the tuft of leaves with his teeth ; and pressing his fore paws firmly against the earth, and drawing his head backwards, the root generally followed : when this method, which required considerable force, did

did not succeed, he seized the tuft as before, as close to the earth as he could; then throwing his heels over his head, the root always yielded to the jerk which he gave it. In our marches, when he found himself tired, he got upon the back of one of my dogs, which had the complaisance to carry him for whole hours together: one only, which was larger and stronger than the rest, ought to have served him for this purpose; but the cunning animal well knew how to avoid this drudgery. The moment he perceived Kees on his shoulders, he remained motionless, and suffered the caravan to pass on without ever stirring from the spot. The timorous Kees still persisted; but as soon as he began to lose sight of us, he was obliged to dismount: and both he and the dog ran with all their might to overtake us. For fear of being surpris'd, the dog dexterously suffered him to get before him, and watched him with great attention. In short, he had acquired an ascendancy over my whole pack, for which he was perhaps indebted to the superiority of his instinct; for among animals, as among men, address often gets the better of strength. While at his meals, Kees could not endure
guests:

guests : if any of the dogs approached too near him at that time, he gave them a hearty blow, which these poltroons never returned, but scampered away as fast as they could.

It appeared to me extremely singular, and I could not account for it, that, next to the serpent, the animal which he most dreaded was one of his own species : whether it was that he was sensible that his being tamed had deprived him of great part of his faculties, and that fear had got possession of his senses ; or that he was jealous, and dreaded a rivalry in my friendship. It would have been very easy for me to catch wild ones, and to tame them ; but I never thought of it. I had given Kees a place in my heart, which no other after him could occupy ; and I sufficiently testified how far he might depend on my constancy. Sometimes he heard others of the same species making a noise in the mountains ; and, notwithstanding his terror, he thought proper, I know not for what reason, to reply to them. When they heard his voice, they approached : but, as soon as he perceived any of them, he fled with horrible cries ; and, running between our legs, implored the protection of every body, while

while his limbs quivered through fear. We found it no easy matter to calm him; but he gradually resumed, after some time, his natural tranquillity. He was very much addicted to thieving, a fault common to almost all domestic animals; but in Kees it was disguised into a talent, the ingenious efforts of which I admired. Notwithstanding all the correction bestowed upon him by my people, who took the matter seriously, he was never amended. He knew perfectly well how to untie the ropes of a basket, to take provisions from it; and, above all, milk, of which he was remarkably fond: more than once he has made me go without any. I often beat him pretty severely myself; but, when he escaped from me, he did not appear at my tent till towards night.

On these details I have dwelt with great pleasure; and if they are nothing to the progress of human knowledge, they are a great deal for my simple and ingenuous heart. They recal to my memory very agreeable amusements; hours of serenity and peace, and the only moments of my life in which I have known the full value of existence. During
the

the whole time that I resided at Swellendam, I made a suitable return to the tender cares of my host by the most lively testimonies of gratitude: but this was not the manner of life that suited my humour; and as soon as my two-wheeled waggon was finished, I packed up my kitchen furniture and my other effects, and set out, without delay, on the 12th of January 1782. According to the information I had received, I directed my course always along the eastern coast, keeping at a certain distance from the sea. The corn farms do not extend further in this quarter: the moderate price of grain is not an equivalent for the difficulty of transporting it to the town.

Two leagues from this place I passed a small river, named *Buffias*; and after two days march we arrived at a wood called the wood of the *Great Father*. Whilst I was making preparations for spending twenty-four hours in this wood, which I wished to traverse, and was counting my dogs, I perceived that one was missing, which was a favourite bitch, named *Rosetta*. Her absence embarrassed me very much: it was a real loss, that reduced my pack almost to nothing; and deprived me of my favourite,

which on her part loved me much. Having asked one of my people if any of them had observed her on the road, one of them assured me that he had given her some food, but in the morning. After a fruitless search of an hour or two, I made my people disperse, and call her on all sides : I also ordered some fuses to be fired ; that the reports, if they reached her, might direct her what course to pursue. But as all this did not succeed, I caused one of my Hottentots to get on horseback, bidding him return the same way we had come, and bring her back to me whatever it might cost. After four hours I had the pleasure of seeing my messenger arrive full gallop, carrying before him, on the bow of his saddle, a chair and a large pannier. Rosetta ran before him ; and leaping upon me, almost oppressed me with her caresses. My Hottentot told me that he had found her at the distance of two leagues from the place where we halted, sitting upon the road, close to a chair and a basket, which had got loose from our baggage without being perceived. I had heard many circumstances, no less extraordinary than this, related of the fidelity of dogs ; but I had never before been a witness

witness to an instance of it. I confess that the account given me by my messenger affected me so much, that I shed tears. I again caressed the poor animal; and this mark of attachment which she had given, endeared her still more to me. Had she not been found, she must have perished by hunger on the spot, or become a prey during night to the first ferocious animal that might have met her. As the fuses which I ordered to be discharged on her account, had not roused any game; and as I was besides convinced, from an exact survey of the forest, that I could not hope to find any, we proceeded on our march the next morning.

Scarcely had we advanced four leagues, when, in crossing a small river which takes its source in this forest, my two-wheeled waggon was overturned. The remainder of the day was scarcely sufficient for us to recover, dry, and put in order, my kitchen furniture and necessaries: a great part of my porcelain being broken, was left on the spot; but very luckily I had more to replace it. Having proceeded three leagues further, we were stopped by the river Duyvenochs, which at

that time was not fordable. As this country was covered with wood, I flattered myself with the hopes of finding pretty birds and insects: resolving, therefore, to wait till the river should decrease, I ordered my tents to be erected at the edge of the forest, while my Hottentots constructed some huts.

I was, however, very unlucky; for the inhabitants of the neighbourhood, informed of my arrival, came with great eagerness to pay me a visit, and to disturb me in my charming retreat. I was teased with the long preambles they made to their obliging speeches, in which they reproached me for not stopping among them; and harassing me with the offers which they repeated, under a thousand different forms, to prevail upon me, they mentioned, with much emphasis, several curious travellers whom they had entertained, and particularly Dr. Sparmann, a member of the Swedish Academy: but, however respectable this authority appeared, I thought proper not to quit my camp.

I had resolved never to lodge in any habitation, during the course of my travels, that I might be more at freedom, both in the day-time

time and in the night ; and that I might have my people and baggage always at hand, in order to husband those valuable moments which one must always sacrifice to the idle talk and absurd relations of these planters, who fatigue you with their tales, and exhaust you with their questions ; but, above all, that I might save my spirituous liquors, with which I should have been continually obliged to enliven their tedious conversations. I therefore thanked these gentlemen, who were not able to divert me from my purpose, so firm and irrevocable was my resolution. The conduct of Dr. Sparmann was no example to me ; for our different views must have given us different ideas : he had occasion only for daylight, to enable him to pursue his botanical researches ; but as I often spent a part of the night in hunting, if I found it necessary, I should have been obliged to abstain from this practice, or to derange my hosts. Another motive, which is purely personal, may, in two words, give an idea of my character, and of the plan of life which it had induced me to embrace : should it appear to be a mark of self-love, my age, the education I have received,

ceived, my country, and the difficulties I overcame, will, I hope, easily plead my excuse. Though I acknowledge the utility of proper highways among civilized nations, my being accustomed to form them myself, in my youth, at Surinam, made me always consider them as a restraint which lessens the value of liberty. Proud of his origin, man thinks it an indignity that people should beforehand dare to number his steps. I have always carefully avoided beaten tracks; and never thought myself completely free, but when surrounded by the rocks, forests, and desarts of Africa. I was certain of meeting with no other traces of human labour than those which I left myself. By the freedom of my will, which commanded then with sovereign sway, and by my complete independence, I really perceived in man the monarch of all animated beings, the absolute despot of nature. Situations which I thought delightful, might by others be thought very alarming. These whimsical notions proceed from the impressions I received in the early part of my life; they are only the pure and natural sentiments of liberty, which rejects, without distinction, every thing that

that seems desirous of prescribing it bounds' I was attached to my principles by too many reasons not to adhere rigidly to them ; and if I except only one instance, when through policy it was absolutely impossible for me to refuse an invitation, I never deviated from my plan during all my travels.

I distributed the employment of my time ; and the usual order of my occupations was as follows :—During the night, when we did not travel, I slept in my tent, or in my wagon : at the break of day, awakened by my cock, I immediately got ready every thing myself for making my coffee, whilst my people were employed in cleaning and taking care of my animals. On the first appearance of the sun's rays, I took my fufee, and setting out with my ape, we made a diligent search every where around till the hour of ten. When I returned to my tent, I found it always clean and well swept : it was under the particular care of an old African, named *Swanepoel* ; who, being no longer capable of following us in our excursions on foot, remained to guard the camp, in which he preserved good order. The furniture of my tent

was not cumbersome; one or two chairs, a table which I employed only for dissecting animals, and some utensils necessary for preserving them, formed all its ornaments. I then laboured from ten o'clock till noon; and during that interval I classed in my drawers the insects which I had caught.—The ceremony of my dinner was equally simple. I placed upon my knees a piece of board, covered with a cloth, upon which one dish only of roast or broiled meat was served up. After this frugal repast, which did not detain me long, I returned to my labour, if I had any work to finish; and then I set out to hunt till sunset. On my return I lighted a candle, and passed a few hours in committing to my journal my observations, acquisitions, and in short all the events of the day. During this time my Hottentots collected my oxen around my waggons and tent. The goats, after they were milked, lay down here and there indiscriminately among my dogs. When business was finished, and a large fire kindled, as usual, we placed ourselves in a circle round it. I drank my tea; and while my people were cordially smoking their pipes, they told tales, the natural humour of which often made me shake my sides with laughter. I took great
pleasure

pleasure in encouraging them; and in proportion as I shewed more frankness, good-nature, and attention, they were the less timid before me. Often indeed, when in better humour, or more favourably disposed by the sight of a charming evening, after the fatigues of the day, I felt myself hurried away by an involuntary charm, and I gently yielded to the illusion. I then saw them contending who should shew most wit to please me; and the best story-teller could judge favourably of his performance by the profound silence which prevailed among us. I know not what powerful attraction continually carries me back to these peaceful scenes. I still behold myself in the middle of my camp, surrounded by my people and animals: a plant, a flower, a fragment of rock, scattered here and there—nothing escapes my memory; and this spectacle, always affecting, every where amuses and follows me.

Our conversations were sometimes prolonged till very late at night; and I must candidly confess that lively sallies which greatly delighted me, often escaped from these clownish people, who had never been polished by education. I asked them many questions; above
all,

all, respecting Kolben, and different authors ; and concerning their religion, their laws, and their customs : but they openly laughed in my face. Sometimes, taking the matter in a serious light, I saw them fall in a passion, shrug up their shoulders, and give vent to their imprecations. I remember that, endeavouring to vilify their faculties and intelligence, in order to nettle them, I compared them to those people who, in the capital of a great nation like Paris, procure without labour a genteel subsistence to a prodigious number of vagabonds, honoured with the modest appellation of *sharpers*. I represented to them, under a thousand different forms, the ingenious resources of these cameleons, and greatly extolled their merit : but with what satisfaction did I observe them unanimously prefer the simplicity of their rural and peaceful life, and consider these resources as base and fordid means, for a nation who boast of their superiority over the people of nature !— Worthy mortals, who have been painted to us as devouring your fellow-creatures, and whom a child however might manage ! peaceful Hottentots ! treat with contempt those people who reduce you to a state of slavery, and distinguish
you

you from brutes only by the cruelties which they withhold from them, in order to bestow them upon you.

My animals were so well accustomed to mix among us, that I was often obliged to force many of them to rise before I could reach my tent. I had a few sheep, which I spared as a resource, in case of scarcity; but I always kept some old ones to tame the new comers.

The canton in which we resided abounded with partridges of three different kinds; one of which was as large as our pheasant. This was our usual food. We put a score of them into our kettles at once, and they made excellent soup and jelly broth. We found also a kind of antelope, of the size of our European goats; the skin of which was of a blackish brown colour, with a few white spots on the thighs. I never found any thing more excellent eating. I killed several of them; as well as of another species, much smaller, which I shall describe hereafter.

My residence in this place had considerably augmented my collection of insects and of curious birds; and as an inhabitant of the neighbourhood, who was going to the Cape, came
to

to offer me his services, I readily accepted them, and begged him to deliver my small treasure into the hands of Mr. Boers the fiscal. I had agreed with the latter that I would send him all my novelties as often as I could find an opportunity: by this plan, even in the commencement of my journey, I preserved many valuable objects from the danger of accidents, and reserved room for others.

My neighbours occasionally sent me vegetables and fruit; and Mr. Vanwerck, who resided nearer my camp, knowing that I was fond of milk, sent me every evening a pailful, which I shared with my people. Kees always perceived the approach of the person who brought it, even at a great distance, and never failed to run to meet him.

From Swellendam, as far as Duyvenochs, the pastures are excellent; and the land, superior to that of the Cape, would produce corn in abundance: but the planters cultivate no more than what is necessary for their own consumption; and the only trade they carry on with the Cape consists in cattle and butter. Some vineyards are found here; but, as the wine is of a bad quality, it is converted

†

into

into vinegar or spirits, which are sold in the neighbourhood.

On the 27th of the month, perceiving that the river had subsided much, we crossed it without sustaining any damage. We crossed also the river Falso; and, after a march of thirteen hours, arrived at the river of Gous or Gourits: at the latter, however, we were stopped; for we found it impossible to cross it, as it was larger than the Seine opposite the king's garden at Paris. Great storms must have inundated the country through which it flows; for at that season it is generally, like the rest, only a rivulet which may be easily forded. Its banks abound with large thorny trees*, and with great numbers of partridges; particularly of that large species which the inhabitants of the Cape call *pheasants*. After remaining encamped three days, observing no decrease in the river, and being always impatient to penetrate still farther, I found only one method of extricating myself from my embarrassment. I resolved to cause a large raft to be constructed; and, having cut down some trees, we employed the bark of

* The *Mimosa Nilotica*.

them

them to make ropes. But to what labour did this fatal operation subject us ! We were obliged to unload our carriages, to take off their wheels, and to embark them piece by piece. All my animals crossed by swimming ; and in several passages I reached the opposite shore, with my people and effects, without the smallest disorder, or the least accident. This attempt, which was attended with wonderful success, gave me great confidence respecting the future, and tended greatly to increase my courage.— This operation, however, cost us three days continued labour ; during which time I was obliged to suspend my hunting excursions. I myself set an example to the rest, and handled the axe like the meanest of my Hottentots. I judged the precaution of removing a little farther very necessary to our common safety ; for the banks of the river which we had quitted were so parched and so barren, that all my oxen must have died of hunger.

Our carriages being remounted, and well loaded, we continued our journey, and travelled fourteen leagues in two days, when we found ourselves opposite *Mossel-Baie*, or Muscle Bay, which in charts is called the
Bay

Bay of Saint Blaife. It is very difficult for ships here to approach the coast, on account of the sharp rocks that border it, the bases of which extend a good way into the sea; but on the northern side there is a small beach, where boats may land with great ease. The environs of this country are interspersed with excellent plantations, which might be a great resource for ships that come hither to water: a salubrious spring, distant about a thousand paces from the sea, would supply them with abundance of water. During our abode in this bay, we found no want of oysters. We often fished with a line, and this method alone procured us a great many excellent fish; what we could not consume, I ordered to be salted. Every night we were alarmed with the cries of hyænas, which appeared to be very furious animals: our oxen were much disturbed by them; but by means of large fires, with which we surrounded our camp, they were prevented from attempting to approach us.

At the distance of a league, I found a kraal, consisting of four huts, in which was a Hottentot family, not exceeding twenty-five

or

or thirty persons, to whom I gave a small quantity of tobacco in exchange for some mats, which I was very glad to procure. This discovery gave me great pleasure, both on account of the profit which I derived from it, as well as of the agreeable surprize it occasioned. I took great delight in contemplating them, for a long time, in their peaceful occupations. They possessed five milch cows, and a small flock of sheep. In the labouring season, the men dispersed themselves over the neighbouring plantations, where by their industry they amassed enough to procure themselves tobacco, and to render their situation more comfortable. They assured me that, in the large woods with which the sides of all the mountains in this country are covered, elephants and buffaloes were sometimes to be met with. Upon this intelligence I immediately began to search the mountains and forests; but my labour was in vain, for neither I nor my people could discover any of them. I perceived, indeed, the prints of the feet of elephants, but they had been made long before; from which I guessed, what was afterwards told me, that if chance

at

at any time brings one of these animals into this country, the inhabitants assemble, and oblige it to betake itself to flight, if they cannot destroy it.

On the 7th, at five in the morning, I quitted Muscle Bay, and at two in the afternoon crossed a river called *Klein-Brak*; it has its source in a wood, rising on a ridge of mountains, which in this place is only a league distant from the sea. Next morning we arrived at a large river, of the same name, which is no more than three leagues from the former. The flowing of the tide renders the water of this river brackish: to cross it without danger, we were obliged to wait for the ebb-tide; and during that interval I procured several sea-fowls, which were extremely abundant in this canton. I found here thousands of pelicans and flamingoes; the deep rose-colour of the one, and the dull white of the other, exhibited a contrast altogether new and curious.

After quitting the river, we had to climb a steep and rugged mountain, which at first frightened me a good deal; but by the help of patience, care, and time, we left it behind us.

When we had entirely reached its summit, we were well repaid for all our fatigue, by the noble view which opened on our sight; we had here an opportunity of admiring the most beautiful country in the universe. At a distance we discovered that chain of mountains, covered with lofty forests, which bounded our prospect towards the west; and under us we beheld an immense valley, adorned with agreeable hills, variegated in an infinite number of shapes, and which extend in an undulating manner as far as the sea. Enamelled meads, and the most beautiful pastures, still added to this magnificent scene, with which I was truly enchanted. This country bears the name of *Auteniqua*; which, in the Hottentot idiom, signifies a man loaded with honey. One indeed cannot proceed a step here without seeing a thousand swarms of bees: the flowers on which they feed spring up in myriads; the mixed odours which exhale from them, and which yield a delightful gratification to the smell—their colours, their variety, and the pure and cool air which one breathes—all engage your attention, and suspend your course. Nature has made these
enchanted

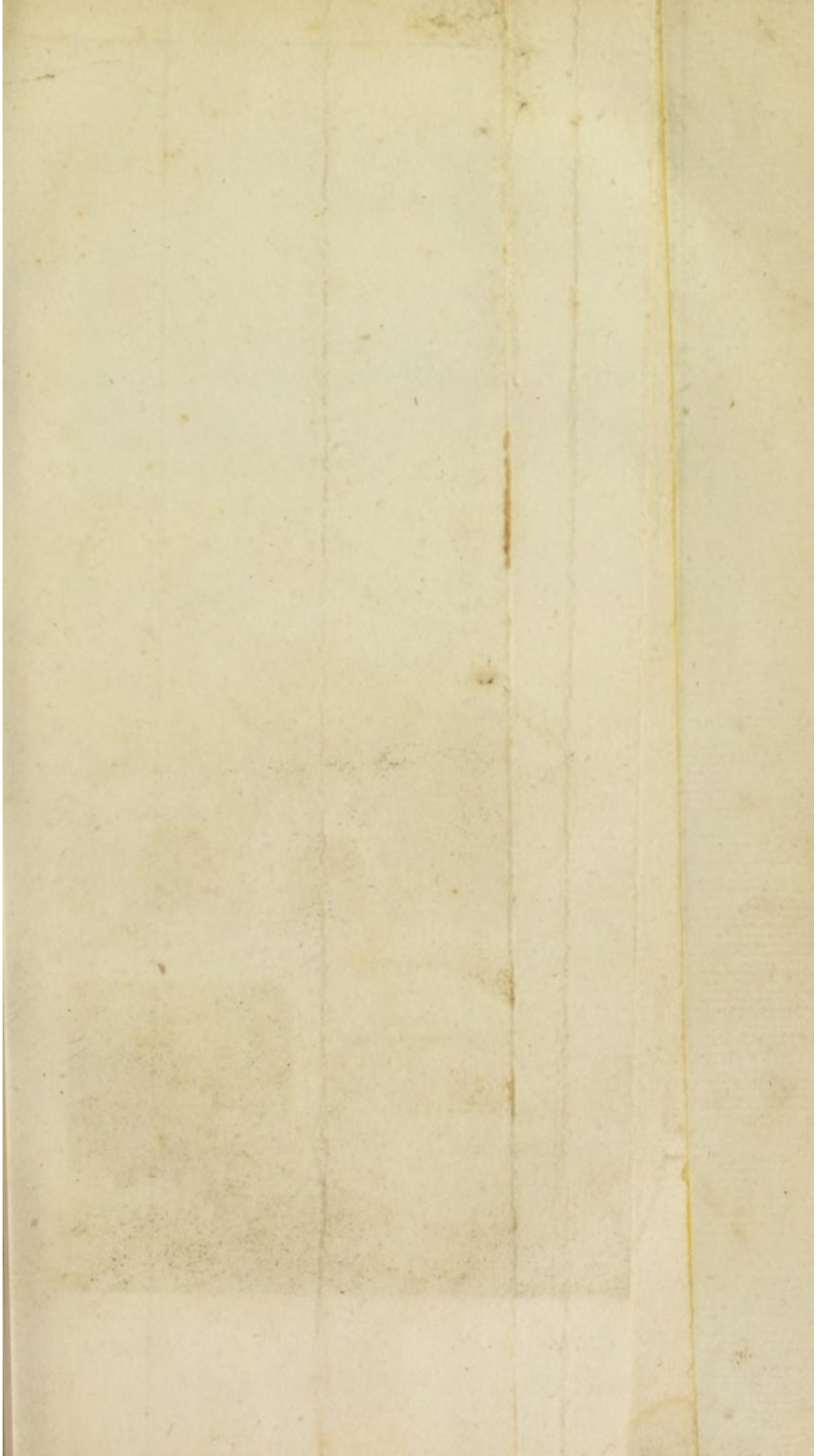
enchancing regions like a fairy land. The calices of all these flowers abound with excellent juices, from which the bees compose their honey: they deposit it every where around, in hollow rocks and trees. My people were extremely desirous of stopping some time in this charming retreat, but I was afraid it would be to them what Capua was to Annibal's soldiers. Without loss of time, therefore, I gave orders for continuing our journey, and hastened towards the river Wet-Els, which takes its name from the woods that grow on its banks. From the large brackish river to this place, we had travelled only seven leagues.

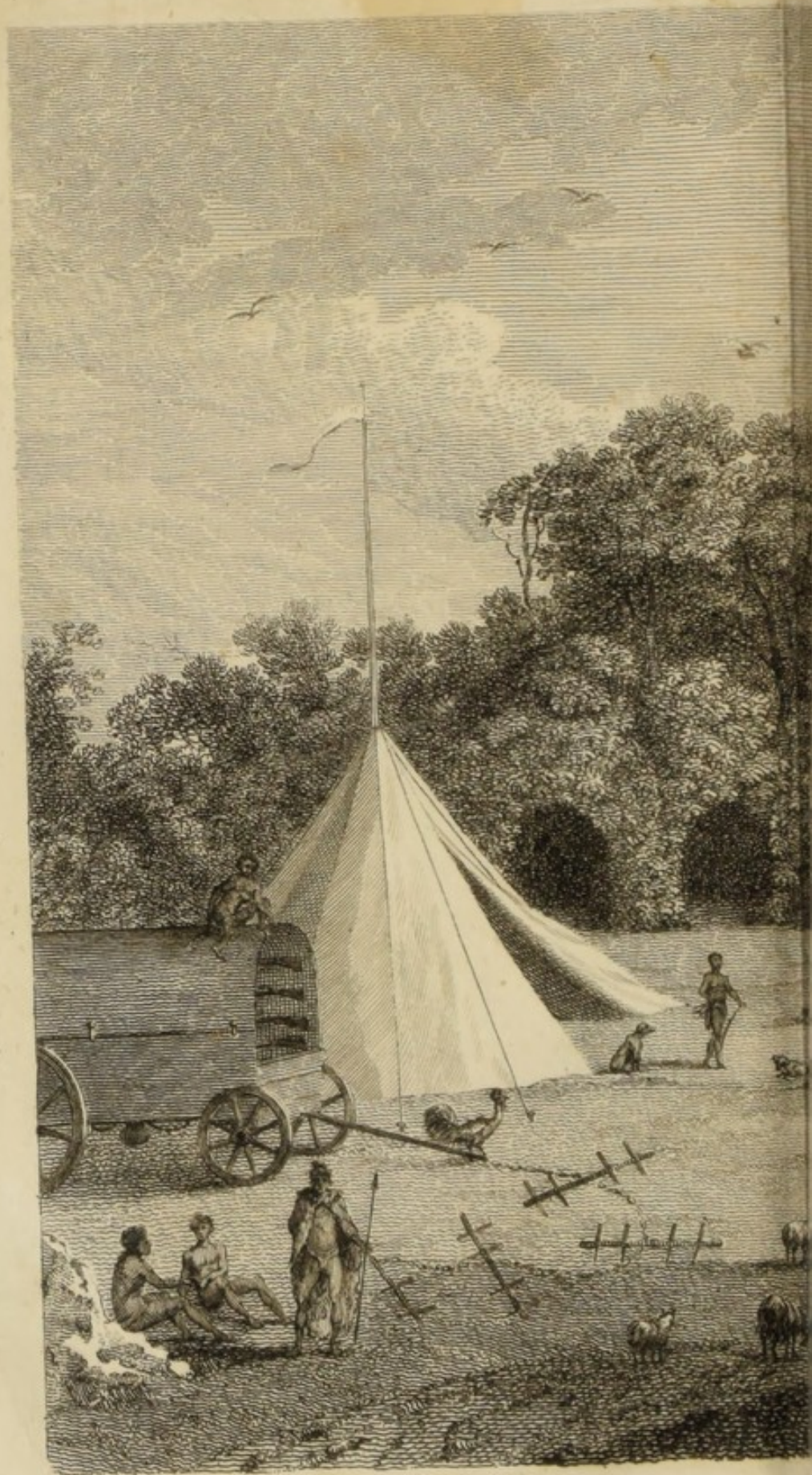
On the 9th, we crossed several small rivulets, which, flowing down from the mountains, run into the sea through an hundred different channels.

All the streams of these rivulets have the amber colour of Madeira wine, and I found that their taste was ferruginous; but I did not take time to examine whether this taste and colour proceeded from their flowing through some mine in their passage, or from the roots and leaves of trees which they water;

and carry along with them. From this place the last post belonging to the Company was not far distant, and we arrived at it after a quick march of three hours. I was now about to withdraw myself from the dominion of man, and to approach a little towards his original condition.

Mr. Mulder, the commander, came to receive me, and shewed me every mark of friendship. He has under him only a subaltern officer, and about fifteen men, who have all been either soldiers or sailors on board the Company's ships. These people cut down all the timber they have occasion for, and construct the carriages destined to transport it: which is a very absurd plan; for if this timber were deposited at Muscle Bay, a paltry bark might in one voyage carry more to the Cape, than would be conveyed on carriages in thirty years: this would assuredly be a considerable saving to the Company, and a general benefit to the colonies. I may add also that the inhabitants of the Cape would not find themselves reduced to the necessity of burning small wood, which they collect at a great expence every where around, by slaves who
have





have no other employment; a method which costs at least the double of what is paid for the finest wood in the timber-yards at Paris.

Can it be believed that the directors of the Company, for their own use, should order ships to be sent every year from Amsterdam, loaded with planks and boards of every kind, whilst in this country there are immense forests, and the most beautiful trees in the world? This absurdity, however, is not at all astonishing. The Company gratuitously furnishes the governor and all the officers with whatever wood they have occasion for, and it is delivered to them at their houses, without any expence; the governor therefore has no personal interest to extend his views to this part of the administration, and to abolish an abuse so prejudicial to the colony.

The whole country of Auteniqua, from the chain of mountains to the sea, is inhabited by several planters, who rear a quantity of cattle, make butter, cut down timber, and collect honey, all of which they transport to the Cape.

I was in some measure filled with indignation to see people, who have wood within

their reach, employ it in commerce, and not have the courage to build for themselves habitable houses. They live in wretched habitations, constructed of wicker-work daubed over with clay: the skin of a buffalo, fixed at the four corners to as many stakes, serves them for a bed; and the door, which is at the same time a window, is shut by a mat; while two or three mutilated chairs, a few pieces of plank, a kind of table, and a pitiful box two feet square, form all the furniture of these real huts. Thus is the picture of the most profound misery contrasted with the charms of this terrestrial paradise; for the beauties of these regions, which I have already sketched out, extend even beyond Auteniqua.

These people however live well; they have game and salt-water fish in abundance; and enjoy exclusively, over all the other cantons of these colonies, the advantage of having the whole year, without interruption, vegetables and plants of every kind in their gardens. For these valuable advantages they are indebted to the excellence of the soil, and to its being naturally watered by small streams, which

which cross each other in a thousand different directions, and, as one may say, lay the four seasons under contribution to fertilize it. This country may justly be called the Limagne* of Africa. These streams, which never dry up in this delightful territory, proceed from a cause well known. The high mountains towards the east, which are covered with forests, stop the clouds and the fogs carried by the east wind from the sea, and this occasions very abundant rains.

It seemed favourable to my views that I should remain some days here with the commander; and this is the only instance in which I deviated from my plan. Besides particular motives which induced me to take this step, I was detained by political reasons, and I could not refuse his invitation with any kind of decency: an order had been every where sent to suffer me to pass, to assist me, and to furnish me with every thing that I should have occasion for. As Mr. Mulder occupied the last post, he had received more

* A territory of France, in Lower Auvergne, lying along the river Allier. It is one of the finest and most fertile plains in France. T.

positive orders than the rest, and I could not help complying with his wishes : the honourable motives of his behaviour were to me a sufficient invitation ; and perhaps he himself depended upon the testimony which my gratitude would give in his favour, when I returned to the Cape.

As soon as I arrived at his habitation, I began, according to custom, to examine the neighbourhood. In traversing the woods, I found the traces of buffaloes and elephants, which appeared to be very fresh ; I saw also some of their dung : and observed a great number of different birds, none of which I had hitherto met with, and among others several touracos. Less than this would have been sufficient to detain me in this spot. At the distance of four or five leagues from the place where Mr. Mulder resided, I found, on the edge of a wood, a very commodious and convenient spot for fixing my camp.

As Mr. Mulder was about to depart for the Cape, he supplied me with twenty pounds of gunpowder ; I embraced this opportunity also to write to my friends, and to send Mr. Boers about an hundred birds, and a small box of
insects,

insects. I increased my train with a few oxen, engaged three more Hottentots, purchased a young horse, which I proposed to breed myself to hunting; and on the 9th of February bid adieu to Mr. and Mrs. Mulder, in order to take possession of my forest, and to establish myself in the spot which I had made choice of.

I had beforehand sent my people to prepare the place, to cut down some trees, and to clear away the bushes with which the ground was covered, that on my arrival I might be able to erect my tents, which I accomplished in a moment. My kitchen was established under a large tree, that seemed to have grown old there on purpose; and my Hottentots, on their part, built and arranged a few huts as well as they could. At the distance of ten paces from us we had a small stream of water, pure as crystal; and opposite a little hill, covered with excellent grass for our horses and oxen; by these means we kept them always near us. So many advantages united, rendered this an agreeable resting place: but unluckily we were obliged to remove several times; as the game of all kinds, rendered shy by our continual

nual

nual pursuits, began to grow scarce, and would have retired from us altogether.

I was sometimes visited by the inhabitants of this district; which enabled me to procure a sufficiency of fruits, vegetables, milk, and of every thing else they could supply me with: their visits indeed cost me some bottles of spirits; but as I detest these noxious liquors, and never drank of them, this attraction retained them a little, and the impression which they made on my casks was not deadly.

I conjectured that the wood near which I had placed my camp, would furnish me with some touracos. As I was not acquainted with these birds, and had never seen one of them, I went in search of them, and was lucky enough to discover a few. I spent a long time in pursuing them, but without effect; for as these birds perch always on the extremities of the highest branches, I never found them within the reach of my fusée. One afternoon, however, I followed one, and did more execution. Hopping from spray to spray, still going only a little way from me, it deceived me for more than an hour, and conducted me to a great distance; till being out of patience
with

with its sport, and finding that I could not approach it, I fired, though I concluded it to be out of my reach, and had the satisfaction of seeing it drop. My joy on this occasion was inexpressible: but the most difficult part was not yet accomplished; it was necessary for me to seize my prey; and, as I had remarked the place where it fell, I rushed through the bushes to take it up, at the expence of having my legs and hands torn, and all covered with blood. When I reached the spot, I saw nothing; and though I carefully searched every where around, going backwards and forwards twenty times over the same places, closely examining the smallest holes and crevices, my labour was fruitless, for I could not find my touraco. My researches and reflections led me to think that I had perhaps broken only one of its wings, which had not prevented it to get away from the spot where it had fallen. Full of this idea, I went a little farther, and began again to search all the environs for more than half an hour; but still no touraco. This disappointment reduced me almost to a state of despair; and the thick bushes and prickly shrubs, which scratched even my face,

had really agitated me with transports difficult to be described. To satiate my anger, I am sensible that nothing less would have been sufficient at that moment than to pursue a lion or a tiger. That a paltry bird, which I had brought down after so many difficulties, and so much desire for it, should escape and thus vanish from my sight, was truly distressing. Unable to contain my passion, I began to stamp, and to beat the ground with my fuscée; but the earth sinking suddenly below me, I disappeared also, and fell with my arms into a pit twelve feet in depth. My astonishment, and the hurt I received by my fall, soon made me forget my anger; and I found myself at the bottom of one of those covered snares which the Hottentots employ to catch ferocious animals, particularly elephants. When I recovered from my surprize, I began to consider how I should extricate myself from this embarrassment, extremely happy that I had not been impaled on the sharp-pointed stake placed in the bottom of the pit, and still happier that I found in it no company. I was however apprehensive that some might arrive every moment; especially if I should be obliged to remain

main there during the night. Its approach began to fill me with great terror; as it opposed and retarded the only resource I had devised to save myself from the fatal pit, without the assistance of others. This resource was to dig away the earth on one side with my sabre and my hands, in order to form a kind of steps; but as such an operation might be very tedious, I formed, though under the most dismal perplexity, the wiser resolution of loading my fusée, and of firing shot after shot in hopes that I might be heard at my camp. I from time to time listened with the utmost anxiety, and a palpitating heart; and at length had the satisfaction of hearing two reports, which inspired me with the utmost joy. I then continued to fire by intervals, to direct those who had answered me which way to pursue their course; and soon after I saw them arrive, all completely armed, but full of trouble and uneasiness. They had imagined that I was pursued by some ferocious animal; but they saw me, on the contrary, in the most pitiful situation, and caught foolishly like a fox. Their alarm, however, was soon dissipated; they immediately cut a long pole, which they let down to me; and by
means

means of this expedient I glided up in the best manner I could, and reached the brink of the pit. This trifling accident, from which heaven would not have saved me as it saved young Daniel, did not make me forget my touraco. With my dogs, which had followed my Hottentots, I trusted I should be able to discover it, in whatever place it might be concealed: sending them out, therefore, on the search, they found it squatted down under a tufted bush. I instantly laid my hands upon it; and the pleasure of at length possessing this charming animal, soon obliterated from my mind the dangers and embarrassment it had cost me.

I afterwards procured as many of them as I wished: I even caught them all alive; for having remarked, in the stomach of this one, the fruits on which they principally feed, I always had recourse to the trees which produced these fruits, whether I wished to fire or to lay snares for them.

This bird, as agreeable by its form as by its colour and notes, which are very distinct, unites nimbleness to elegance; all its motions are lascivious, and its attitudes full of grace.

Its

Its colour is a bright grass green; a beautiful tuft of the same colour, bordered with white, ornaments its head; its eyes, which are of a lively red, are crowned with eyebrows of a dazzling white; and its wings are of the most beautiful purple, which changes to a violet, according to the attitudes it assumes, or the point of view under which it is seen.

Naturalists have very improperly classed this bird among the cuckows, with which it has no relation whatever. The cuckow, in every country of the world, is a bird that feeds only on caterpillars, insects, &c. but the touraco feeds on fruits.

The cuckow, in every climate, never lays but in the nests of other birds; which, by these means, she loads with the burden of hatching her young: the touraco, more affectionate and more careful of its family, constructs its own nest, where it lays its eggs and hatches them itself.

These two characters are sufficient to form a species entirely distinct from the cuckow; but I shall resume this subject, and enlarge upon it, in my ornithology.

In those intervals when the heavy rains or
excessive

excessive heats seemed to compel me not to go abroad, which was however very rare, I did not, on that account, spend my time in indolence. I employed myself, in my tent, in making snares to catch animals alive, of every species. It will hardly be believed that I invented a method of procuring them with my fusée, more entire and in much better condition than those which I caught in my snares: it was in this manner, however, that I procured the smallest and most delicate birds.

It is highly necessary that every naturalist who labours himself in forming a collection, should be acquainted with the method which I *invented*. This expression is not too bold; my idea is absolutely new, for I never heard that any person ever thought of it before me.

The manner in which I proceeded was as follows: I put a smaller or larger quantity of powder into my fusée, according as circumstances might require. Immediately above the powder I placed the end of a candle about an inch in thickness, ramming it well down; after which I filled the barrel with water up to the mouth. By these means, at the proper distance, when I fired at a bird, I only stunned it, by watering
and

and moistening its feathers ; and, as I instantly laid hold of it, no time was left for it to spoil its plumage by fluttering. The water, impelled by the powder, went directly to the mark ; but the piece of tallow, being lighter than the water, did not reach so far. In my first attempts it often happened, that having sometimes fired too near, or put too much powder, or too thick a piece of candle, I found the latter entire in the animal's belly ; but after a short apprenticeship I made no more mistakes, and never missed my aim. I have often let my fusée remain charged in this manner from morning till night ; yet the powder was never damaged, nor did the piece go off less readily. It may be easily guessed that I never fired horizontally in this manner.

One day, after my return to Europe, being at the house of a friend, I happened to mention before some strangers this method which I have described. One of them, who durst not flatly contradict me, or openly avow his incredulity, endeavoured to prove to the rest, by very clear arguments, that my assertion was at least exaggerated. Whilst they were disputing, I retired without being per-

ceived by the company; and having prepared a fufee according to my own manner, I returned through the garden to the window, where these gentlemen were continuing their dispute. Pointing with my finger to a little bird perched near them, I took aim and fired at it, upon which it fell. I immediately feized it; and, delivering it alive into the hands of my antagonist, put an end to all his fine reasoning.

Towards the end of the month we were much impeded by new rains, which continued a long time, and almost without intermiffion. These storms fucceeded each other with great rapidity: the lightning fell feveral times in the forest near us; the water gained upon us on all fides; and, to add to the difagreeablenefs of our fituation, our camp was in one night entirely overflown: we therefore quitted the wood, and went to eftablifh ourfelves on fome higher fpot in the open country. I now faw, with the utmoft uneafinefs, that it would be impoffible for us to get out of this place in which we were furrounded: thofe fmall rivulets, which had before appeared to us fo pleafant and agreeable, were changed into furious torrents, which carried fand, trees, and fragments
of

of rock along with them. I was sensible that, unless I exposed myself to the greatest dangers, it would be impracticable to cross them. On the other hand my oxen, harassed and chilled with cold, had deserted my camp; nor did I know how or which way to send after them to catch them. My situation was far from being comfortable; and I passed many moments in great dejection. My poor Hottentots, fatigued and sick, began already to murmur. We had no more provisions, and no more game: what we killed was scarcely sufficient for our subsistence; because, confined by the torrent, which increased more and more every day, we had not even the resource of our neighbours to obtain assistance. How afflicting our condition with such preparation! One might have said that an universal deluge was about to inundate Africa. I however kept part of my apprehensions to myself; whilst I beheld my sad companions cast their restless looks towards me, and attest by their silence what fears they entertained for themselves. Never did a prospect appear under more gloomy colours: our charming walks, laid waste by the waters, were in an instant ravaged; and those delight-

ful gardens were changed into a dismal and inhospitable desert. In this distress, collecting all my forces, I entreated my friends to search, at least, for our lost and dispersed oxen; and to resolve to cross one of the torrents, whatever might be the consequence. By the strangest caprice of fortune, the fatal event which threatened us with sudden destruction, was in part the occasion of our safety. One of my Hottentots, in searching for a passage, perceived in the middle of the water a buffalo, which had probably been drowned the evening before, for it was still very fresh: on this discovery he came, with shouts of joy, to convey us the agreeable intelligence; and nothing indeed could have arrived more seasonably. We drew the animal to the shore, not without considerable danger; cut it to pieces on the spot; and, having carried away the soundest parts, left the rest to my dogs, which, having fasted a long time, found great relief in this refreshment. We saw them return from their repast with their bellies so full that they could scarcely walk. I cannot help mentioning another circumstance, as it will tend to convey a still better idea of the dreadful situation

to which we were reduced. These dogs, which were now like walking skeletons, watching our motions, followed closely at our heels whenever any of us retired to ease the wants of nature; and I have seen them fight desperately with one another for this disgusting nourishment.

Nothing in this life is durable; and a period is allotted to misfortunes as well as to felicity. The end of March brought a change in the weather; the rains became less frequent, the torrents decreased; and I dispatched four Hottentots in quest of my oxen, which they brought almost all back, after an absence of four days. Some of them had returned the way we came, and had even repassed the large brackish river; others had taken shelter in different plantations, and some had shifted for themselves in the best manner they could.—Four of them, however, were missing, which my people could not find, nor did I ever afterwards hear any accounts of them. Without delay I prepared to quit this inhospitable country, and to transport my camp three leagues farther, to a hill named *Pampoen-Kraal*. I took advantage of two days of fine weather to dry my effects, great part of which were moist

and half rotten; and the skin of the buffalo which we had flayed, served to renew the traces of my waggons and carriages, which the moisture had rendered unfit for service. Notwithstanding these continual rains, and my cruel disappointments, I was still capable of making some efforts. I had found in the woods an old tree, the trunk of which was hollow; and I went thither with my fuscée almost every day, to watch for such small birds or game as might appear. I was there sheltered at least from the rain, and I supported my courage with hope. From this sacred niche I brought down, without mercy, every thing that presented itself before me. Thus the study of Nature engaged my attention, in preference to more pressing wants. Continually inflamed with the powerful desire of robbing her of her treasures, I was dying with hunger, and yet thought of my collections. In spite of all obstacles I saw my riches gradually increase: I had acquired a small collection of rare objects entirely unknown in Europe, which I exposed to the air; and I found that they were not so much damaged by the moisture as the rest of my effects. In this wood we found no
game

game but the bosbock antelope, and a smaller species, of which I have already spoken. On the plain, besides the three species of partridges above-mentioned, we observed another called the *red pheasant*, because its feet and the naked skin of its throat are of that colour. Of carnivorous animals we saw tigers and hyænas, but not a single lion:

The heavens became every day more and more serene, and seemed to presage that our situation would soon be as happy as it had been miserable and gloomy. The hill of Pam-poen-Kraal, on which I had placed my camp, pleased me much. Not far from my tent stood a small eminence, crowned by a thicket of thirty or thirty-five feet in diameter. The trees and shrubs of which it was composed, in growing had so interwoven their branches, that the whole appeared as one very thick and bushy body. Having imagined that I might convert it into a little palace, I ordered a path to be traced out to its center, and the branches to be lopped off on each side to the height of a man, so as to afford an easy passage. In the middle of the thicket, by the force of labour and employing the hatchet, we were able to

cut out two chambers perfectly square ; in one of which I placed my table and my chair : this was my study. The second I ornamented with my kitchen utensils : but this did not prevent me from using it at the same time as a dining room. These two apartments, naturally covered with branches and leaves impenetrably thick, afforded me a delightful and cool retreat, when harassed and covered with sweat and dust, after my hunting excursion in the morning, I retired from the heat of the day, and the scorching rays of the sun. When fatigue had sharpened my appetite, what delightful repasts ! when sleep stole upon me, what voluptuous and gentle repose !—Ye sumptuous grottoes of our financiers ! ye English gardens twenty times changed with the wealth of the citizen ! why do your streams, your cascades, your pretty serpentine walks, your broken bridges, your ruins, your marbles, and all your fine inventions, disgust the taste and fatigue the eye, when we know the verdant and natural bower of the Pampoen-Kraal ?

Whatever it cost me to abandon this amiable solitude, I was however obliged to think of departing. One day having traversed the
whole

whole neighbourhood, to discover what route I ought to pursue, in order to travel with the greatest ease and safety, I found, at the distance of a league from my camp, a very rapid torrent, named *Kayman's Hole*; but I know not for what reason, as in all this country I never observed either a kayman or a crocodile. This torrent flowed from two mountains not very high, but excessively steep: on my right I had the sea, at the distance of about a thousand paces; and on my left mountains and woods, which it was impossible for me to pass with my cattle and carriages: no other resource therefore remained for me, but to cross the dangerous *Kayman's Hole*. On this account I was very uneasy, and even vexed. Let the reader imagine to himself my situation—stopped thus at every step; and, when one obstacle was overcome, seeing new ones still rise before me, while I was fully sensible of the necessity of penetrating farther. The torrent appeared to me too much swelled, and too rapid, to attempt to cross it. I was, above all, afraid for my oxen; and rafts could only have been employed in transporting my effects. I was therefore obliged to arm myself

self with patience, and to wait a more favourable opportunity.

On the 18th of April I received an express from Mr. Mulder, who, having returned from the Cape, conveyed to me some letters which he had brought along with him, and which were in answer to those I had entrusted to his care in the beginning of February. I found that my friends were very uneasy for my fate, and wished me to return. Others exhorted me to persevere; and, sitting at ease by their fire sides, gave themselves little trouble concerning obstacles, provided my journey could prove of utility to science; or, without going so far, supply food for their curiosity, in fables related after their manner. I found each of them interested according to his particular views: but I resolved to follow my original plan. It may be easily imagined how much the bad season had retarded my progress, since I had scarcely travelled eight leagues during the time which Mr. Mulder employed in his journey to the Cape. In a letter which this gentleman wrote to me, he appointed a place of meeting, and proposed that we should amuse ourselves a few days with fishing on the sea shore, if such

an excursion would not derange me : he promised to bring with him nets, and every thing necessary for our spending a week together on the coast ; and he likewise informed me that his wife would be one of the party. This proposal gave me great pleasure ; and, soon after the arrival of the messenger, Mr. and Mrs. Mulder made their appearance, accompanied by an officer next under Mr. Mulder in command. One might have compared them to so many patriarchs on a journey. The latter on the bow of his saddle, over his pistols, carried a young child four months old, which was suckled by his wife. They were all four on horseback. His carriage, with his nets and baggage, had gone to wait for us on the sea shore. Having ordered one of mine to be got ready also, I loaded it with my tent, one or two empty casks, and every thing that I conceived would be useful to us for our miraculous fishing. When we reached the shore, after a few compliments and the usual ceremonies, we cast our nets several times into the water, but always in vain ; we scarcely caught any thing : and this exercise afforded amusement to nobody. Resolving, therefore,

to

to proceed a little further, to a small lake formed by the tide, where we hoped to be more successful, we began to march forwards; but, as I was much less curious in fishes than in birds, I should have been soon tired of our sport, had not the politeness of my friends, and the open and easy gaiety of the ladies, engaged a little of my attention. I however rambled a good deal about on foot, from one side to another, exploring every part around with eager eyes, and not suffering either the air, the roads, or the trees to escape me. Having arrived at the borders of the lake, I sought for a commodious spot where I might erect my tents: but an alarm, which we little thought of, had nearly deranged all our grotesque cavalcade. In crossing a spot covered with very high and thick reeds, the workmen all of a sudden came upon a buffalo, which had lain down there to rest. They were so near, that the animal, as much frightened as they by this unexpected apparition, in retiring threw down the horse of the under commander, and that of his wife. The consternation now became general; every one endeavoured to fly, and to make off as fast as possible. Mr. Mulder's
people,

people, who were not much accustomed to buffaloes, being nearer the water, plunged into it up to the neck. Mine, better trained to hunting, assumed a bold look; but the animal, scared by the sight of so many people on all sides, and not knowing where to fly, remained motionless, posted against an enormous rock. On hearing the noise, I immediately ran up; but unluckily I had no other arms except my double-barrelled fusée. It was not to be supposed that an ordinary ball would kill a buffalo. I however ventured to approach him, and to fire. As soon as I had discharged my piece he quitted his position, and in a furious manner came straight towards me; but a second ball, which hit him, instantly damped his courage: he turned round, and passing near one of my oxen, which carried our kitchen apparatus, discharged all his fury on this peaceful animal, gave it two blows in the belly with his horns, and soon disappeared. I could not prevail upon the company to remain longer in this place. The husbands feared much for their wives; and, as I judged by their disordered looks that they were really affected by their tender alarms, I advised

I advised them to return to our first fishing place on the sea shore. In our second attempt fortune became more favourable; and we had the satisfaction of catching so great a quantity of fish, that I ordered some of them to be salted, and to be packed into my casks, whilst Mr. Mulder imitated my example. This sport, which continued eight whole days, and the occupations which it gave us, amused us indeed much more than I had expected. From time to time I absented myself for a little, and I killed several rare birds; but I was not under the necessity of contending with a second buffalo. When we salted all our fish, we divided our provision, and took leave of one another: but I confess that I could not leave these worthy people without regret; for they had enlivened our little excursion with a good humour so natural, so simple, and so mild. With my eyes I followed their little caravan; and I did not depart until I had entirely lost sight of them.

When I returned to my camp, I found every thing in order; my cattle properly taken care of, and my people employed on their duty,

duty, for which I testified to them my satisfaction.

I committed to the care of Mr. Mulder all the animals I had preserved since I dispatched my last cargo, as well as the living touracos I had caught in snares; which he promised to transmit to Mr. Boers at the Cape. He had also the complaisance to give me one of his nets, and to send me a pair of wheels which I asked from him. As my cart was very inconvenient, and always in danger of being overturned, I resolved to mount it in the same manner as the rest of my carriages.— This being a work of great necessity, we set about it immediately; and every one took a share in the labour. The timber requisite for this operation was soon cut out; and in less than a fortnight our cart, transformed into a waggon, rolled upon four wheels. It did not indeed in its construction display the hand of a master; but it answered my purpose as well; and I must observe that the whole fortnight was not employed in altering it. When I perceived that it went well, and that my cartwrights would acquire honour by it, I sent
a de-

a detachment of my people to the neighbourhood of the torrent, which we were about to pass, with orders to fill up the fissures, and repair the highways which the waters had spoiled: I made them carry stones and large branches of trees with them, to render the quagmires passable; which, without this precaution, might have disjoined, and even broken, my carriages. When by the force of excessive labour we had smoothed every pass, on the 30th of April I caused my caravan to file off before me; and casting my eye, for the last time, on the delightful hermitage of Pampoën-Kraal, quitted it with the same regret as that with which a lover separates from his mistress. I often afterwards enquired respecting this happy asylum; and I had the satisfaction of learning that it had not only been respected, but that the Hottentots had named it after me.

Notwithstanding all my precaution, we found great difficulty at *Kayman's Hole*, as well as at a river called by the Hottentots in their language *Krakede-Kau*, which signifies the *girls ford*. This country was formerly inhabited by Hottentots, who are all now extinct or dispersed: the deep pits which are
to

to be seen at certain distances, indicate that they were hunters; and that they caught in their snares buffaloes and elephants: but these animals are never or rarely now seen in this canton.

After a journey of eight hours, we arrived near the *Swarte Rivier*, or Black River: as it was still swelled by the rains, we were obliged to pass it on rafts, which we constructed in the same manner as before. The fresh traces of buffaloes which we observed on the other side made us remain here some time: and I at length had the pleasure of killing one; a Hottentot I carried along with me, killed also another. I was so pleased with my success, that I instantly returned to my camp, to announce this agreeable intelligence, which promised a supply of provision to my people for a long time, in case we should be reduced to distress. As we had killed these two animals on the banks of the river, above the place where I had settled, I ordered them to be pushed into the stream, which conveyed them opposite to my tent, where they were cut up: and I desired them to be cut into very small pieces, that they might be more easily salted, and exposed afterwards to the air and the sun.

Our waggons, as well as the bushes and trees that furrounded us, were all loaded with bloody fragments of our buffaloes; but on a sudden, in the midst of our operation, and while we were not expecting it, we found ourselves attacked by flights of kites and vultures; which, without any fear, perched among us. The kites, above all, were the most impudent. They rapaciously seized upon the morsels of flesh, and even contended furiously with my people. When they had each carried away a pretty large piece, they retired to some branch, at the distance of ten paces from us, and devoured it before our eyes. Though we fired our fuses, they were not frightened, but returned incessantly to the charge; so that, finding that I wasted my powder in vain, we resolved to disperse them, and drive them away with large poles, until our provisions should be quite dry. This manœuvre, which for a long time harassed my people, did not prevent us from being plundered without mercy; but, had we not employed it, nothing absolutely would have remained of our two buffaloes.

The tongues I ordered to be smoked; and I never omitted to pursue the same method with those of all the animals I afterwards killed.

This

This was a great delicacy; and a resource for me when our provisions fell short. When I wished to indulge in sensuality, or to awaken my appetite, I added a small plateful of it to my usual allowance. There were none but the tongues of elephants which I did not wish to preserve in this manner: their taste, and even their figure, always occasioned a disgust which I could never overcome, and which it would be very difficult to account for.

When our provisions were prepared and packed up, we quitted the Black River; and having crossed the *Goucom*, two leagues thence, we reached the *Nysena*, after travelling two leagues more. The latter is a considerable stream, and was still swelled by the tide.—Hitherto I had found no spot more agreeable for fixing my camp. Here I had a most delightful meadow of about a thousand feet square; a forest of tall trees formed a magnificent shelter on the south, extending circularly towards the east; on the north I had before me the river, which appeared to be very abundant in fish; and a variety of small game swarmed on its banks. So many advantages might have almost made me forget Pampoën-Kraal; but all its attractions could not tempt me to stop.

Agitated by a secret uneasiness, I saw on the other side of the river a difficult mountain, which it was necessary for us to pass. It was so prodigiously steep, that I apprehended some accident would befall me; for an internal foreboding seemed strongly to announce it. I had indeed almost lost, in one moment, the whole fruits of my labours, and of my incredible fatigues. I had taken the prudent precaution to conduct my waggons one after the other; for, had I attempted to make them mount altogether, I should not have had oxen enough to draw them. I ordered twenty to be yoked to my *master waggon*; which, as I have already said, carried all my artillery and my principal riches. My oxen set out; and, by climbing with great exertion, had almost reached the summit: but the chain which kept the first eighteen together breaking all of a sudden, the waggon rolled down with great precipitation to the bottom of the mountain, carrying with it the two oxen yoked to the pole. From the eminence on which we stood, my conductors and I followed it with our eyes, almost petrified with fear, and in the most dreadful agitation.—Twenty times did we see it ready to fall over the precipice that bordered the way: and this
misfortune

misfortune would have infallibly taken place, had it not been for the superior strength of the two oxen attached to the pole, which nothing could overcome. This accident, had it happened, must have entirely suspended my journey. My carriage, and my most valuable effects, would have been dashed to pieces; my powder, my shot, and my arms, would have been scattered: and I should have been entirely ruined without the least resource. The waggon was, however, stopped by a rock on the banks of the torrent. We descended with shouts of joy; and having collected my effects, and put every thing in its proper place, we again yoked the oxen to this fatal carriage; which, without danger, regained in an hour what it had lost in ten minutes. The rest, being not quite so heavy, arrived in perfect safety. I had ordered the traces to be doubled, and four men to escort the wheels, all ready to put their hands to the spokes on the least jolt. The road however was so steep, that this would not have prevented a fall; but it would have diminished the rapidity of it, and given us time to direct the carriage in such a manner, as best to avoid the dreadful precipice.

Fear is a magnifying glass which always

enlarges objects. Mine had announced something very unlucky. In vain should I attempt to paint my looks, and the agitation of my mind, in this distressing moment. I involuntarily followed all the motions of the waggon, and seemed to set it right by those of my body, and by the gestures of my arms. Each jolt penetrated to the bottom of my heart.

I however found that our loss was not so great as I expected. I might almost say indeed that a miracle was operated in my favour; and I perceived that the god of the fatal trident did not always pursue me. I not only found that my carriage had escaped without much damage, but the shocks it sustained had not materially deranged what it contained. My oxen, which were dragged backwards by a waggon that weighed nearly two tons, and which might have been dashed to pieces before they arrived at the bottom of the mountain, escaped with only a few dangerous wounds, which did not prevent them from continuing their labour. It must be confessed that our misfortune, allowing for time lost, was not very great; though we had every reason to fear for the future.

In proportion as I got at a distance from
the

the plantations, and advanced into the country, every thing in my eyes assumed a new appearance. The prospects became more magnificent; the soil seemed to be more fruitful and rich; nature appeared to be more majestic and grand; and the lofty mountains presented, on all sides, more charming and delightful points of view, than I had ever met with. These scenes, contrasted with the dry and parched fields of the Cape, made me believe that I was more than a thousand leagues from it. "What!" said I, in my ecstasy, "shall these superb regions be eternally inhabited by tigers and lions? What speculator, with the fordid view only of establishing a kind of center for commerce, could have preferred the stormy Table Bay to the numberless roads, and natural and commodious harbours, which are to be found on the eastern coasts of Africa?"

Thus was I reflecting within myself, whilst I was climbing the mountain on foot, and forming vain wishes for the conquest of this beautiful country, which the indolent policy of the European nations will perhaps never gratify.

We still continued to advance, having always to the west that great chain of mountains, covered with wood, which we had before perceived at a great distance. After travelling four hours and a half, I halted at a small rivulet about three leagues distant from the sea. Here we observed a prodigious quantity of fish floating up with the tide; and as soon as I saw them in a state of stagnation, I ordered the net which I had received from Mr. Mulder to be extended across the stream. This was the first time I employed it; and, as it was too long, I found it necessary to have it doubled. Were I to mention the number of fish which remained when the tide ebbed, I should be considered as an extravagant exaggerator: I shall only say that the net suffered considerably. My people cooked these fish with a variety of sauces: as for me, I reserved about an hundred for myself, which, with different spices, I put into a kettle without any water; and having hermetically sealed the coverlid with a kind of viscous earth, I buried the whole under hot ashes. By this arrangement I procured an excellent dish of fish, with which I could scarcely be
fatiated;

fatiated; and which lasted me for several days.

One could not choose a more agreeable and advantageous spot, than that upon which I then was, for establishing a thriving colony. The sea advances through an opening of about a thousand paces in breadth, and penetrates into the country to the distance of more than two leagues and a half. The basin which it forms is more than a league in extent; and the whole coast, both on the right and the left, is bordered with rocks, which intercept all communication with it. The land, which is rich and fertile, is watered by limpid and refreshing streams, that flow down on all sides from the eastern mountains. These mountains, crowned with majestic woods, extend as far as the basin, winding round with a number of sinuosities; which exhibit an hundred groves, naturally variegated, and each more agreeable than the other. In this spot I found a great many small white herons, of the same species as those sent from Cayenne, and which I had often seen, when young, in Surinam. I discovered also the large egret *, but it was here more rare.

* A species of the heron.

The woods furnish small game in abundance: buffaloes, and sometimes elephants, are also found in them. Two or three houses, the inhabitants of which have no other employment but to carry on a dull and laborious trade in wood and butter with the Cape, are seen here; but scattered at a very great distance from each other.

In this beautiful country I remained till the 13th. We then crossed, by very disagreeable roads, a forest named *Le Poort*; and, after travelling seven hours more, reached the river *Witte Drest*. In several places I observed a few more habitations, no less miserable and wretched than the former; for the distance, the dangers of the journey, and other obstacles invincible to these poor people, do not permit them, except very rarely, to drive a few oxen to the Cape: and, even when they arrive there, they are in a bad condition; and on that account the owners of them make a bad market, and are as badly paid. At the time I passed here, many of these people had not been at the Cape for a number of years.

I still continued to advance, but whether it was that fatigue, and the repeated misfortunes I successively experienced, had deranged my health;

health ; or that I was obliged to pay tribute to these new climates, and that the temperature of them made a powerful impression on my constitution—I was often attacked by sudden sickness, and haunted with the gloomy idea that I should leave my ashes at the distance of two thousand leagues from my family. My imagination, too lively, still exaggerated this misfortune ; and I gave way to dejection and despair. The most dismal melancholy took possession of my mind ; for I now saw myself in reality stopped in my progress. I was afflicted with violent head-aches, an extraordinary heaviness, and a general uneasiness, that seemed to announce very serious danger. This was the only event I dreaded when I set out. I found it would be necessary for me to stop, that I might recruit my strength : and I at last formed my resolution ; convinced that the most acute disorder must here, as well as amidst the physicians nostrums, take a favourable turn, or relieve the patient by death.

I dragged myself along, therefore, as well as I could, and took a cursory view of the environs. Having observed an agreeable situation for my camp, in the neighbourhood of a small rivulet, I ordered my tents to be erect-

ed

ed at the edge of a wood. I knew nothing of the practice of phyfic, but regimen and repose; my people knew still less; and, if my malady increased, I was likely in their hands to run very great risques. I became so weak, that I was obliged to remain abed in my waggon, which the heat of the sun rendered like a burning furnace. I was tormented with excruciating pains in my bowels; a violent dysentery followed; and I heard my people, in their turn, complain one after the other of the same distemper. Imagining then that this kind of epidemia was occasioned by the great quantity of salt fish which we had eaten, I ordered all that remained of it to be burnt. In the mean time I was waisted by a continual fever; but I did not entirely lose my strength: and, after a copious perspiration for twelve days, rest, and a proper regimen, re-established me. I took moderate exercise, calmed my spirits, and I soon found myself every day get better. The same regimen restored all my people. I did not fail to add to the list of the grand and sublime discoveries in medicine, the warm bath; and I am firmly persuaded that this bath, or chance, saved my life.

When I was perfectly recovered, I resumed
my

my usual occupations, exercise and hunting. In my first excursion I found that we were flanked by a second river, called *Queur-Boom*, which falls from the western mountains, and is joined by the *Witte-Dreft* at the distance of a league from the sea. Its mouth is near a bay, called by navigators the Bay of Agoa. In a journey which governor Blettenberg of the Cape made towards this place, he ordered his name, the year and the day of his arrival, to be engraven on a stone column. I examined this wretched monument, which wanted nothing but an inscription in verse to render it still more contemptible. This name now prevails in all the colonies; and the Bay of Agoa is known under that of *Blettenberg's Bay*. Thus a paltry post, erected by the vanity of an individual, in a moment gives birth to errors which disconcert conventions before received; and at the same time overturns opinions generally adopted by the people. In our neighbourhood there happened to be a flock of from twenty-five to thirty bubales in a place inclosed by the sea and our two rivers; and as our camp was so situated, that it filled the whole space which remained for them to escape by, these animals were entirely at our mercy.

mercy. Considering them as part of our live stock, we did not spare them; for, whenever our provisions began to fall low, I brought down a couple of them. Not one of them escaped us; and their skins, when joined together, made a pretty covering for the waggon I had repaired at Pampoen-Kraal.

As large troops of buffaloes came to browse in our sight, on the other side of the Queur-Boom, we gave chase to them, and caught several of them.

This animal is remarkably wild, and one must attack it with great precaution in the woods; but in the open fields it is not formidable. It fears, and flies from the presence of a man. The surest way of catching it, is to harass it with dogs. Whilst it is engaged in defending itself, a bullet in the head, or the omoplate, will instantly dispatch it. The bullets to be used must be of a large size, and made either of tin or lead. If the animal is not wounded in the two places above mentioned, it will escape.

Its horns are very large and divergent. By the closeness of their roots to each other, on the forehead, one would almost imagine that they proceed from the same base. The buffalo

faloe is much stronger and larger than the most beautiful oxen in Europe ; and I am of the same opinion as many travellers, that it would not be impossible to render it tractable and submissive to the yoke. That this attempt hath never yet succeeded, is but a weak objection ; for false experiments are no proof. Such an enterprize, indeed, would require time, knowledge, and art ; and ought not to be entrusted to the indolence of an ignorant planter, accustomed often to see insurmountable obstacles in a slight difficulty. This speculation is worthy of the grand views of a Company who are continually endeavouring to extend every branch of industry and commerce. Were some of these animals caught when very young, and put into proper inclosures, and were they gradually accustomed to come and receive some favourite food from their keeper, they would soon carefs the hand that feeds them. When they grew up, they would produce young ; which, instructed by their mothers, would follow their example, and become still more familiar. Why should we not believe that, at the third generation, the manners of the buffaloe would be softened, when we every day see ferocious bears, taken from the
moun-

mountains of Savoy, traverse our streets, dance, leap, salute people, and in a word obey the orders of their conductor with the most timid submission to his avaricious caprice.

In general, all animals with horns and cloven feet have a haggard eye, which gives them a terrible appearance: but, as in carnivorous and sanguinary animals, this is not a sign of fury, on the contrary it indicates terror and fear. They have neither the deep cunning, nor the mischievous disposition, of the lion, the tiger, or even the elephant. Indeed they have no occasion for them; the vegetables upon which they feed do not cause so much heat in their bowels: they are exceedingly wild, but they are timid. In this apparent contrast I see nothing contrary to nature, and I discover one of the most striking features of man.

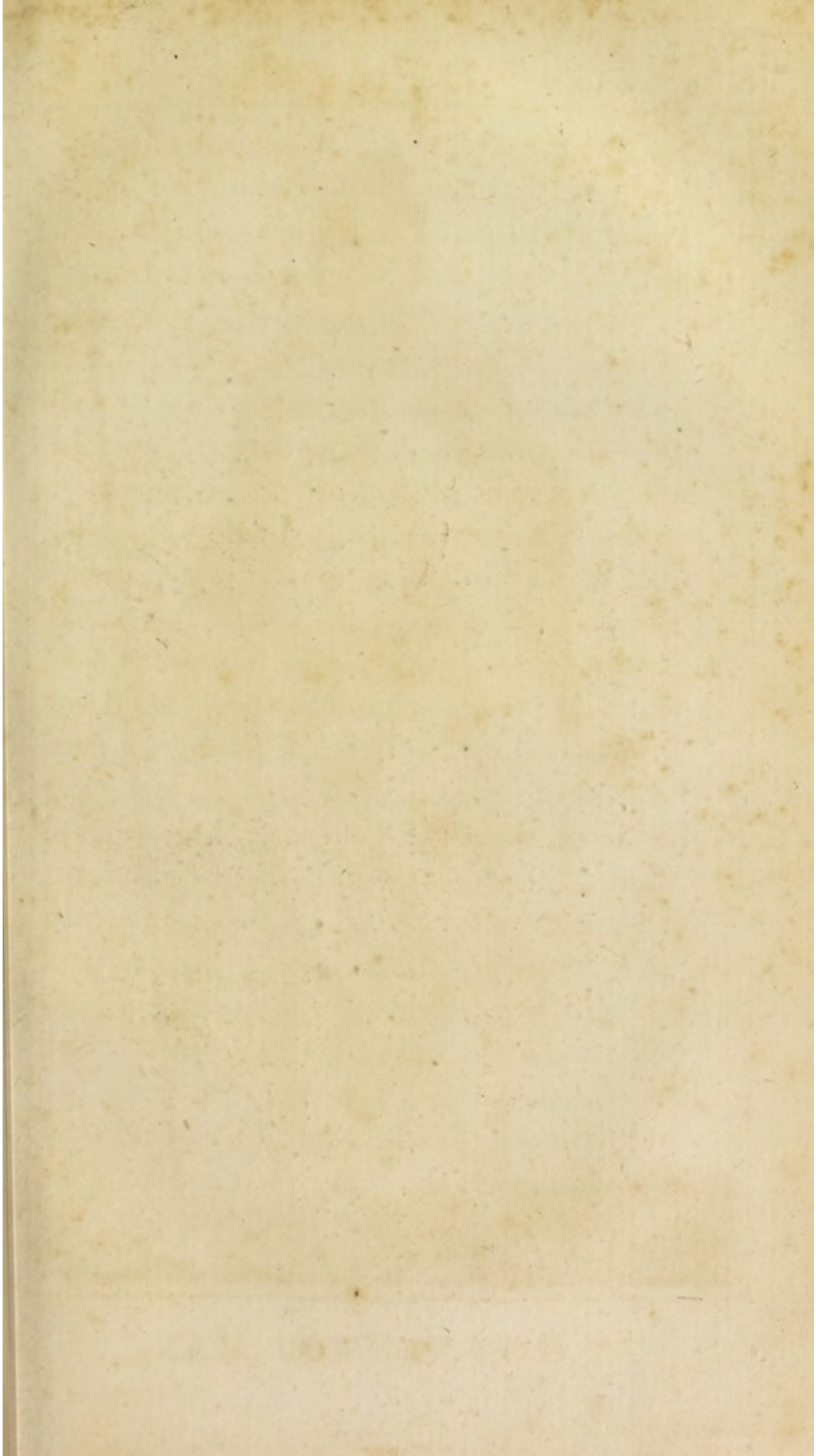
I shall not here enter into an examination of those complicated shades, hitherto so little known, which distinguish savage animals from each other. It is always either a regard to their own safety, or a desire of providing for their own subsistence, that leads them to ferocity; but being, like us, subject to passions variously combined, they proceed to it by different

ferent routes. This examination, which is foreign to a work merely historical, I shall reserve for my description of animals.

I had never yet taken a close survey of the bay, very improperly called Blettemberg. The attention I paid to my health, at the close of my disorder, had hitherto prevented me from examining it; and, when I went thither for the first time, I was much surpris'd to find that it was only a very open road, scarcely extending into the country at all. It is very spacious, and has a sufficient depth of water for the largest vessels; the anchoring ground is sure; and, by means of boats, they may be easily carried to a beautiful part of the shore, which is not confined by the rocks that abound there, as they are all detached from one another. By advancing a league from the coast, the crews would arrive at the mouth of the Queur-Boom, where they would find water. Refreshments might be procured from the inhabitants of the environs; and the bay would supply fish, with which it abounds; and excellent oysters, with which all the rocks are covered. This bay is one of those places where government ought to establish warehouses and repositories for timber:

the forests every where around are magnificent ; and they could be more easily cut down than any where else: for it is not to steep mountains that one must go in search of wood, as in the country of Auteniqua ; it is here ready at hand. Warehouses, as I have said, ought to be erected close to the bay ; and, during the fine monsoon, it might be transported to the Cape in a short time, and without any risque. This easy expedient would open the eyes of the inhabitants to their own interest : the exportation would be renewed, and would soon increase. These inexhaustible lands once cultivated, besides affording hopes of abundant crops, would draw thither a great number of intelligent planters, on account of the ready communication which they could have with the Cape : and these people would procure from all parts necessaries and conveniences which they must now renounce ; because, to find them, it is necessary to go more than an hundred and fifty leagues into the country. Were this scheme carried into execution, these honest Dutchmen would no longer be loudly and sincerely wishing that some nation would form a settlement in their neighbourhood, and furnish them with those articles that contribute

to





A HOTTENTOT MAN.

Look See

to the happiness of life, and the pleasure of society. It would also, at the same time, extend the treasures of commerce, at the Bay of Agoa. These wishes, so contrary to their political interest, could not be gratified without hurting them. The Company have nothing to do but to form here a proper establishment. To the general profits of such an institution would be added those of individuals, which could not fail to be of importance. They might, for example, cut down a certain tree, called *stinking wood*, and export it to Europe, where it would undoubtedly soon be preferred to every other kind employed by cabinet-makers.

The advantages which the Company and the colony might derive from this beautiful country, could not certainly have escaped the governor, who made a journey hither. But in settlements, the prosperity of which is at the mercy of a few united together, and interested in opposing every plan that would tend to diminish their profits, what is a governor? A passive being; indolent with respect to the general good, and who is actuated only by a regard to his private concerns. Consenting to a kind of banishment for a certain

time, he privately establishes in his own mind, as the first article of his contract, that, as he must rapidly make a fortune, every method of procuring it is honourable and lawful. Full of these ideas, when he arrives at the seat of his government, where he finds every thing favourable to his views, he exercises his rapacity with impunity; when he returns to his own country, he insults his fellow-citizens by insolent pomp: and he undoubtedly never thinks of opening the eyes of his employers, concerning those improvements and regulations which in a little time would increase the happiness of a populous colony.

I am of opinion that colonies, under the management of exclusive companies, are like those public carriages which circulate through all Europe, carrying passengers and goods at the same time; provided the latter arrive safe, the proprietors care very little whether the poor travellers who descend from the coach have their limbs broken or sound.

In the neighbourhood of this bay I found means to increase my collection with several beautiful birds, and even with some new species, which were common here in the woods: but I wished, above all, to procure one which
more

more than once put my patience to the proof, and had like to have cost me very dear. It was a bald-buzzard*, of a most beautiful species. This bird, of the genus of the eagle, is almost as large as the ospray. Every day I saw it hovering over my camp, but at such a distance that it could not be reached by a ball. I however constantly observed its motions; and I made a person always keep watch, and never lose sight of it. One day that I had crossed the Queur-Boom, while walking along the bank opposite to that on which my camp stood, I perceived a number of heads, fragments of large fishes, and the bones and remains of small antelopes, strewed on the ground, near the rotten trunk of an old tree. I immediately concluded that this must be the place where two of these bald-buzzards had established their fishery, or at least their ordinary haunt; and it was not long before I saw them soaring round in the air, at a great height. Without loss of time I concealed myself in a thick bush; but this stratagem was not executed with sufficient alertness to deceive the piercing eyes of these two eagles. They doubtless observed me; for they did not de-

*By some naturalists called the sea eagle. T.

scend. Next day, and for several days, successively, I returned to my station, at break of day. I posted myself in the thicket, but all my vigilance was ineffectual. This business was very laborious: because, to go and return, I was obliged to pass the river twice; and at these times it was necessary to wait for the ebbing of the tide.

Tired out at last, as I wasted my time without being able to succeed, I took two Hottentots with me; and crossing the river, in the middle of the night, conducted them to a spot near the trunk of the old tree, where I made them dig a hole three feet wide and four deep. When it was made, I placed myself in it; and having ordered them to cover the hole over my head with a few sticks, a piece of a mat, and some earth, I reserved only a small opening, sufficiently large for me to put my fusée through it, and to see the old trunk. I then desired my people to return to the camp. Day approached, but the cruel birds did not make their appearance. The earth seeming to be newly thrown up, had no doubt rendered them suspicious; and this was a circumstance which I had not at first thought of. At the close of the night, I came forth from
my

my hole, and went to pass a few hours at my camp; after which I returned, and interred myself as before. This expedient I continued for two days successively, with much patience. During that interval, the sun had dried the earth, and made it all of one colour. About the middle of the third, I observed the female soaring above the tree, upon which she soon alighted, with a very large fish in her talons. I instantly discharged my piece; and had the pleasure of seeing her fall, flapping her wings: but before I could disengage myself from my mat, and the earth which covered me, she so far recovered her strength as to fly; and, brushing the surface of the river, reached the other side, where she expired.

The joy which I felt on finding myself in possession of this bird was so great, that, without observing that the tide was up, I threw myself into the water, with my fusée on my shoulder; and I was not sensible of my imprudence, till in the middle of the river I found myself up to the chin. To add to my misfortune, I was alone, and entirely unacquainted with swimming. Had I attempted to return, the rapidity of the current would have undoubtedly thrown me down. With-

out knowing what was to become of me, I pursued my way, as it were, mechanically; and I had the good fortune to reach the opposite bank: an inch more would have infallibly drowned me. I rushed upon my bald-buzzard; and the pleasure of securing my prey, soon effaced every remembrance of fear and danger. I was, however, obliged to pull off all my clothes, and to spread them out to dry: in the mean time I amused myself in examining my prize; and, when my clothes were perfectly dry, I returned without any danger to my habitation. When I arrived, I was told that several of my people were gone in pursuit of a buffaloe, which they had met with; and, towards evening, I saw them return, loaded with the limbs of the animal, which they had cut up on the spot. Next morning, very early, I did not neglect to send in search of the fragments, which they had left to attract birds of prey. This method procured me the male bald-buzzard; which differed from the female in nothing but the general distinction of carnivorous birds, that of being always a third smaller. I shall give a figure and description of the latter, under the name of *Vocifer*,

The

The same morning, as I was sitting calmly in my chair, at the entrance of my tent, having before me a table upon which I was dissecting my bald-buzzard, an antelope, of that species called the *bof-bock*, suddenly crossed my camp, and passed through my carriages; while my dogs, which had first seen it, and which endeavoured to oppose it, were not able to make it alter its course. After this alarm, it ran straight towards a net extended to dry, at the side of my camp; tore it to pieces; carried away some fragments of it; and, pursued by my whole pack, threw itself precipitately into the river. At the same instant I saw nine wild dogs arrive, which had probably given chase to it, and which were following its traces. At the sight of my camp, these animals stopped short, and, making a little tour, reached a small hill, upon which I had posted myself; and from which, as well as I, they could see their prey seized by my dogs and my Hottentots; who did every thing in their power to tear it from the teeth of the former, and to bring it to me alive. They indeed succeeded effectually, after having lashed its legs. Nothing could be more pleasant than to see the simple look of these wild dogs; which
being

being still spectators of this provoking scene, had not quitted the eminence; and, being seated on their rumps in a melancholy posture, sufficiently shewed by their impatient gestures what ideas they entertained of our injustice, and of their own right to the repast which we had deprived them of. I wished much to catch one of them, and some of my people crept softly along in order to reach them; but being more cunning than we, they suspected their manœuvres, and made off full speed. I sent a bullet after them, to thank them for the service they had rendered us; but, as it did not take effect, I might as well have saved myself the trouble. This antelope I attempted to preserve, and to tame; but it was so wild, the sight of my dogs inspired it with so much fear, and it struggled so much, and made so many violent motions, that it must infallibly have destroyed itself. To save it therefore from this torture, we killed and ate it.

This adventure, for more than eight days, afforded subject for my wits to exercise their genius on; and they laughed at the poor wild dogs for having started the game, to see themselves so suddenly deprived of it.

It must however be allowed, that, had not my dogs been supported by my people, they would

would not have been able to secure the antelope; for, though they were more numerous than the wild dogs, the latter were stronger, fiercer, and more courageous. I shall afterwards have occasion to speak of them, and to rectify a great many errors respecting them, which have been propagated and confirmed by men of the greatest talents. But how can people speak with any certainty of objects which they have never seen themselves, especially when they copy the relations of others who know them as little?

Until the 15th of June I formed several encampments in the neighbourhood of the Bay in different places. Resolved to continue my journey into the country, between the chain of mountains and the sea, I went to reconnoitre the way: I endeavoured, but without success, to find a place where my carriages could easily pass; for the forests were so extensive, and so thick, that there was no possibility of penetrating through them. My Hottentots, on their part, were not more fortunate in their researches than I: we could absolutely discover no outlet. I determined therefore to cross the chain of mountains; but to accomplish this, it was still necessary that I should

should find the beginning of a passage, where my unfortunate oxen might be able to keep their feet. In vain did I traverse, run, and search every where around; for nothing appeared to my view but peaked rocks, to whatever quarter I turned. Without knowing it, we had entangled ourselves in a kind of hollow valley, without any opening, from which we could not get out but by returning the same way we had come. This method through necessity we were obliged to pursue; and we again found ourselves at the wood of Poort, from which we had departed a month before.

Such is the happy instability of the human mind, that little is sometimes wanting to restore it to its former tranquillity. This spot, to which I returned with the utmost regret, and which before seemed so barren and dismal, all of a sudden resumed a new and smiling appearance. Having observed, as I walked along, the traces of a flock of elephants, which must have passed there the same day, nothing more was requisite to banish all my chagrin, and to console me for the delay I had experienced in my route; we therefore erected our tents in that place.

Among my Hottentots there was one who had travelled thus far in his youth with his horde and family, who had not been long removed from it. As he had besides a superficial knowledge of the country, I selected him, with four others; and, having put my camp in order, we departed all six, carrying with us some provisions; and following the traces, which we never lost sight of even for a moment: but they led us on till night without seeing any thing. We then sat down to supper very merrily, exhorting one another not to think too much of the enjoyments of our camp; and, having kindled a large fire, we stretched ourselves out around it, on the cold hard ground.

Though each of us had affected to inspire his companions with courage and patience, we were equally tormented with emotions of fear and uneasiness: none of us enjoyed a sound sleep: on the smallest breath of wind, or the least quivering of a leaf, we started up to listen, and began to prepare for our own preservation. Night passed away amidst these slight alarms; and at the break of day I roused my sleepy companions by loud cries: little time was requisite for them to be dressed; and
a glass

a glass of strong liquor revived their spirits, and made them forget the rude manner in which I had awakened them. We spent the second day in great dejection; and we were not so successful as on the first. In the evening we repeated the same ceremonies as before, but with this difference, that being perhaps become bolder, or even more confident, we hoped that an uninterrupted sleep would recover us a little from our fatigue, and serve at least to refresh us. We were however disturbed by a very sudden alarm. Scarcely had my Hottentots been asleep an hour, when a buffalo, attracted by the light, approached close to us; but as this animal is afraid of man, no sooner did he observe us, than he was seized with terror, and instantly fled. The noise which he made in retreating precipitately through the bushes, and the crashing of the branches, awakened us; upon which we all started up, and having searched around for the space of an hour, discharging our pieces at random, we returned to our fire. The third day was still more disastrous: the history of it I shall relate more at length, for it often recurs to my mind; and at present, as the fire of youth becomes cooler, it
does

does not lead me into such rash enterprizes, and has given place to calmer ideas: the remembrance of it still affects me, and makes me shudder.

Pursuing the traces of our animals without ever losing sight of them, we arrived at a very large open part of the forest, in which there were only a few shrubs, and some underwood. Having stopped here, one of my Hottentots climbed up a tree to get a better view; and casting his eyes every where around, he made a sign to us to be silent, by putting his finger to his mouth; and signified by his hand, which he opened and shut several times, what number of elephants he perceived. When he descended we held a council; and going to the leeward of them, that we might approach without being discovered, he conducted me through the bushes so near, that he brought me quite close to these enormous animals. I almost touched them, as I may say, and yet I did not observe them; though I can safely declare that my eyes were not fascinated by fear. In such situations one must run great risks, and prepare for danger. I stood upon a small eminence just above the elephant. In vain did my courageous Hottentot point it out

with his finger; and twenty times repeat, in an eager and impatient tone, *there it is*. I saw nothing of it; for I cast my eyes to a much greater distance, and never imagined that what I beheld below me could be any thing else than a rock, since the mass I saw was entirely motionless. At length, however, a slight movement attracted my attention; and the head and tusks of the animal, which eclipsed its enormous body, turned towards me. Without losing this opportunity, or wasting my time in fine contemplations, I rested my large fusée on its pivot, and taking aim at the middle of its forehead, discharged my piece, upon which it instantly dropped down dead; whilst about thirty more, startled by the report, fled on all sides. Nothing could be more amusing than to see the motion of their large ears, which flapped about in proportion to the swiftness with which they ran: but this was only a prelude to a much more animated scene.

I was surveying them with great pleasure, when I fired at one of them as it passed close to us. By the excrements tinged with blood which it dropped, I judged that it was dangerously wounded, and we began to pursue it. Sometimes it fell, then got up, then fell
again;

again ; but we were close at its heels, and still made it rise by the shots which we discharged at it. On the fourteenth shot, it turned with great fury upon the Hottentot who had fired ; whilst another discharged a fifteenth, which only served to increase its rage ; and, as it advanced rapidly towards us, he called out to us to be upon our guard. I was only twenty-five paces distant from it ; loaded with my fusée, which weighed thirty pounds, besides ammunition : and I was more disadvantageously situated than my people ; who, not having gone so far, could more easily escape the avenging trunk, and extricate themselves from danger. I therefore betook myself to my heels : but the elephant, at every step, gained upon me ; so that, more dead than alive, for only one at that moment ran up to defend me, I found no resource but to lie down close to the trunk of an old tree, which was extended on the ground. Scarcely had I reached my lurking place, when the animal arrived, leaped over the trunk, and, being much frightened with the noise of my people, whom he heard before him, he stopped short to listen. From the place where I lay I could have easily fired, as my fusée very luckily was loaded ; but the animal had al-

ready received so many shots without effect, and it was in so unfavourable a position, that, despairing to kill it by one discharge, I remained motionless waiting for my fate. I however watched it, resolved to sell my life at a dear rate, should it attempt to return towards me. My people, uneasy for their master, called to me from all quarters; but I was very cautious not to give them any answer. Convinced by my silence that they had lost their chief, they redoubled their cries, and were filled with the utmost despair. The elephant, frightened, immediately turned round, and a second time jumped over the tree, six paces below the spot where I was, without perceiving me; upon which starting up, fired with impatience in my turn, and wishing to shew to my Hottentots some signs of life, I discharged my fusée in its posteriors. The animal then entirely disappeared; leaving every where as it passed certain traces of the cruel situation to which we had reduced it.

The picture is not yet finished; gratitude and friendship demand the last touch. Worthy man, who possess'est a feeling heart, the moment is now come when I must erect to thy memory that monument which I promised

mised thee. Thou canst never comprehend with what pleasure I discharge this duty: may it confer some honour on my travels, and even ornament the relation of them. It will never reach thee in the bosom of thy peaceful desarts: but thou wert sensible of my tears, and thy fraternal arms have pressed me to thy bosom. Whether thou art alive or numbered with the dead, I still feel it. The remembrance of me will be preserved longer and more gloriously among thy savage hordes, than by empty trophies reared by the vanity of man. I confess myself unworthy of it, and I renounce it. But do thou, generous Klaas, young pupil of nature, whose virtuous mind was never corrupted by our elegant institutions, preserve always the remembrance of thy friend. It is to thee alone that he still addresses his tears and his tender regret.

When stretched out by the trunk of an old tree, at the mercy of a furious animal, which with its wandering eye was searching for me every where around; and which, if it had turned towards me, might have destroyed me on the spot—it was then that my heart, quite palpitating with terror, was opened to the sensations of a tender sentiment, inspired by

one of those people, of whom polished nations never speak but with horror or contempt; whom, without knowing, they consider as atrocious beings, the refuse of nature; in a word, by an African savage, a Caffre, a Hottentot.

When I left the Cape, Mr. Boers gave me this man, as a person upon whose bravery and fidelity I could depend. He had expressly charged him never to abandon me, whether dead or alive; promising to reward him handsomely, if, on my return to the Cape sound and safe, I should give a satisfactory testimony respecting his behaviour. It was this man that never quitted me for a moment; and who, having seen me suddenly disappear, hurried to my assistance, though he fought for me in vain. I heard him through the bushes call me with a faint voice, which indicated his anxiety; then address himself to my dejected and confounded companions, who followed at a little distance, and reproach them with their timidity, when surrounded by danger. “What
“ will become of us?” said he, in his own expressive and affecting language—“what will
“ become of us, should we have the misfortune
“ to find our unhappy master trod to death
“ under

“ under the feet of the elephant? Dare you
“ ever return to the Cape without him? With
“ what face will you appear before the fiscal?
“ Whatever excuse you may make, you will
“ be considered as base assassins: it is you in-
“ deed who have destroyed him. Return to
“ the camp; plunder and disperse his effects;
“ do whatever you choose. As for me, I
“ shall never quit this place: dead or alive
“ I must find my unfortunate master; I have
“ resolved to perish along with him.”—These

words were uttered with sighs and lamentations so affecting, that, even in the most critical moment, I perceived the tears start from my eyes, and the tenderest sensations succeed to terror. My firing my fusée was a signal of joy; and I found myself in an instant surrounded by my people, and in the arms of my dear Klaas, who squeezed me so closely that I could scarcely disengage my body from him. This faithful youth in turns kissed my person and clothes; while his companions, with the utmost sorrow, and in a suppliant attitude, stretched out their hands towards me, as if to implore my pardon. I took care to console them; for I was too highly gratified by this scene to disturb it by useless words or reproaches. From that

day, the happiest in my life, in which I knew the pleasure of being sincerely beloved, and from no motives of interest, I considered the worthy Klaas as my equal, my brother, and the confidant of all my pleasures, misfortunes, and secrets: he has more than once calmed my inquietude, and revived my drooping courage. If he afterwards shewed any signs of weakness which were dangerous, and contrary to the good order I had established among my people, this testimony of his attachment gave him so much power over me, that I could never allow myself to shew severity towards him, or even to alarm his heart.

I drew from nature the portrait of this brave Hottentot; and the faithful and striking resemblance here given of him was executed under my inspection, and engraved from my own design.

As night was approaching, we hastened towards the elephant which I had been so fortunate as to kill with one shot: and indeed nothing could have been more seasonable; for our presence drove away some vultures, and several small carnivorous animals, which, without loss of time, had begun to devour it. We kindled a number of fires; and, as our provisions ran short, my people cut a few steaks from the
elephant,

elephant, and prepared for me some slices of the trunk. This was the first time I had ever tasted such food; and I firmly resolved it should not be the last, for I found it most delicious. Klaas assured me that, when I tasted the feet, I should soon forget the trunk; and, in order to convince me, he promised me a most luscious breakfast, which he instantly ordered to be prepared. The four feet of the animal were then cut off: a hole about three or four feet square was made in the earth, and filled with burning coals; and the whole being covered with dry wood, a large fire was kept up in it during the greater part of the night. When the hole was sufficiently heated, every thing was taken from it. Klaas placed in it the four feet of the animal, covering them with hot ashes; afterwards with coals, and some small pieces of wood: and this fire was suffered to remain till day-light. All that night I was the only person who slept; for, according to the orders given by Klaas, my people kept watch. They informed me that they had heard many buffaloes and elephants ranging around. This we expected, as the whole forest was filled with them; but the number of

our fires prevented them from coming to disturb us.

At breakfast my people brought me one of the elephant's feet; which had swelled so much by its being baked, that I could scarcely distinguish its form. It however looked well, and exhaled so sweet a smell that I was eager to taste it. I indeed found that it was food fit for a king. I had often heard the feet of bears boasted of; but I could not conceive how an animal so heavy and coarse as the elephant could produce so tender and delicate flesh. "Never," said I to myself—
"never can our modern Luculli display upon
"their tables a dish like that which I now
"enjoy. In vain with their riches do they
"change and reverse the seasons; in vain do
"they boast of laying all nations under con-
"tribution: their luxury has never yet at-
"tained to this gratification; bounds are pre-
"scribed to their sensuality." And I devoured without bread my elephant's foot; while my Hottentots, seated near me, regaled themselves with other parts, which they found no less excellent. These particulars may appear childish, or at least indifferent, to a great many
readers;

readers; but it is necessary to relate every thing, since so many whimsical and absurd notions have hitherto been entertained respecting this singular country which I was traversing.

The rest of the morning we employed in plucking out its tusks; as it was a female, they did not weigh twenty pounds: the animal herself was eight feet three inches in height. My people then loaded themselves with all the provisions they could carry, and we set out to return to our camp. We at first proposed to follow the one we had left alive, and which had been wounded in so cruel a manner; but so many had arrived during the night, that their traces were entirely confounded: we were, besides, so fatigued, that being afraid to discourage these poor people, I resolved to lead them back as soon as possible.

The Hottentots possess the faculty of sight in the most exquisite degree; and this advantage is seconded by a very wonderful attention. Upon the driest ground, where, notwithstanding its weight, the elephant leaves no traces perceptible to a common eye, amidst withered leaves scattered and driven here and there by the wind, the African can distinguish the
prints

prints of this animal's feet: he sees the path it has pursued, and that which he must follow to come up with it. A green leaf reversed or torn off, a bud destroyed, the manner in which a small branch is broken, and a thousand other circumstances, are to him never-failing marks, whilst the most expert European hunter would lose all his resources. As for me, I could discover nothing; though I had bestowed much time and attention upon this divining part of one of the most delightful kinds of hunting. I confess that I was so fond of it, that I did not disdain to enter into the minutiae of it. I acquired instruction more and more every day; and, when I ranged the woods with my people, I spent whole days in asking questions; and I had sometimes occasion to put my precepts immediately into practice.

When we returned to the camp, my old Swanepoel told me that, during my absence, he had been every night disturbed by flocks of elephants, which had approached so near that they heard them break the branches of the trees, and browse on the leaves. I made a tour through the forest; and I indeed saw a great many young trees broken, branches
stripped

stripped of their leaves, and young shoots devoured.

This was enough to induce me again to take the field; especially as my people had been allowed sufficient time to repose. I however chose rather to go and surprize these animals in the day time, than to wait for them in my tent during the night. In the morning, therefore, I set out; but I was obliged to wander to a great distance. From the top of an eminence, at the edge of the wood, I perceived four in some very thick bushes: and taking care to get to the leeward of them, I approached with great precaution; surveying them with much pleasure for half an hour, while they were eating the extremities of the branches. Before they took them in their mouths, they beat them three or four times with their trunks; in order, as I imagine, to shake off the ants, and other insects. After this ceremony, they always grasped with their trunks all the branches they could surround; and, conveying them to their mouths always on the left side, swallowed them without much chewing. I remarked that they preferred those branches which were best furnished with leaves; and that they were, besides, extremely fond of a
yellow

yellow fruit, when it was ripe, which in the country is called a cherry.

When I had sufficiently examined their method of feeding, I fired at the head of the one nearest to me, which I killed; and in less than ten minutes I in the like manner extended the whole three on the ground*.

We imagined that there were no more: but a great noise near us having made us turn round, one of my Hottentots, who observed a small elephant, killed it. I was very sorry for his rashness, and reprimanded him severely. As this animal was not larger than a calf of five or six months old, I might have easily tamed it.

Among the four I had killed, there was a young male seven feet one inch in height. Its tusks weighed only about fifteen pounds each.

The largest of the rest, which were females, was only eight feet five inches in height; and their tusks, in general, did not exceed fifteen pounds each.

A singularity which astonished both me and

* When the elephants are in a flock, and pursued, if the first that is fired at falls, one may be certain of killing all the rest, one after the other. I shall speak of this singularity hereafter.

my Hottentots, who assured me they had never before seen it—and which naturalists, according to their laudable custom of receiving as certain and invariable principles only what is related in books, and by those who travel in their closets, will probably doubt—is, that the female, which we judged to be the mother of the young male, had only one teat, situated in the middle of her breast. It was full of milk, some of which I squeezed into my hand, and found it to be very sweet; but the taste of it was far from being agreeable: this milk issued from eight small orifices, very perceptible and distinct. The rest had two dugs, placed generally under the breast, of the same form as those of women; and of such a size, that more than one lady of pleasure who has lost a little of her plumpness, might have envied this charm in my female elephants.

The young male which my imprudent Hottentot killed, had no tusks; and when I opened its lips a little, at the place from which they should have grown I perceived only a small white knob, of the size of a swan shot: its flesh was extremely delicate. In one of the females I hoped to discover a foetus, but I was deceived. I found their stomachs filled with

a very limpid liquor, some of which my people drank, and which I also had the curiosity to put to my mouth; but it was so disagreeably nauseous, that to destroy the taste of it, and to refresh myself, I went and drank from a spring that happened to be at the distance of a quarter of a league from the place where we were.

Having left my people busy in cutting up the elephants, when I returned from the spring, at the end of half an hour, I was much surprised to perceive nobody. I could not conjecture what had obliged them to leave their work; nor could I conceive the cause of this sudden desertion. Beginning to bawl out as loudly as I could, in order to recal them, in case they should be near enough to hear me, I was much astonished when I saw them all four come out of the elephant's belly, into which they had entered to detach the interior fibres: these, next to the feet and the trunk, are the most delicate morsels.

I dispatched my fifth Hottentot to tell Swanepoel to send me a yoke of oxen and a chain. As we had cut off the four heads when they arrived, we began by putting the chain through them; but it required no little art
and

and addrefs to make the oxen approach, and to yoke them to the chain. They snorted violently, turned away their noſtrils, and ſtarted back with horror. By ſtratagem, however, we were able to bring them back; and they were yoked to the four heads, which they dragged to my tent, acroſs ſands, duſt, and buſhes ſtained with their blood: a horrid ſpectacle without doubt, but ſtill neceſſary; as the roads were ſo bad that a waggon could never have been conducted to the ſpot. But the caſe was ſtill worſe, when, being deſirous of returning to the elephants, near which I had left a part of my people, I could not make my horſe paſs thoſe places which were tinged with their blood. I was obliged to take another route; and when we arrived near the elephants, as ſoon as he ſaw and ſmelled them, he capered and kicked in ſo violent a manner, that he threw me; and making off full ſpeed, by a very long compaſs returned to the camp.

I am again about to touch upon one of thoſe moments which do not twice occur in life. With what ſenſations is my ſoul agitated! I ſhall curſe pleaſure, and all its inventions. One muſt be a different being to combine ſo
many

many ideas and various sentiments. He who experiences them cannot support them; he is agitated, oppressed, and borne down by them.

Being obliged to return on foot, I perceived through the trees a strange Hottentot on horseback, taking the nearest way to come up with me. Having stopped to wait for him, I found that he was an express sent by Mr. Boers. He had received orders to enquire concerning me in every part of the colonies through which I might have passed; and to follow my traces, when, quitting the known roads, I should enter the distant country. This man had faithfully executed his commission; and, guided by the ruts of my wheels, had visited all my different encampments, and thence proceeded till he found me.

Before I quitted the Cape, Mr. Boers had promised that if he received any letters for me from Europe during my absence, whatever route I might pursue, or wherever I might be, he would take care to convey them to me. This respectable friend kept his word; and in the packet which his Hottentot put into my hands I found several which bore the French stamp. As these were the first ac-
counts

counts I had received from Europe since my departure, it would be difficult to describe with what impatience and agitation I received them from the messenger. Uncertain what I was to learn from them, I had scarcely strength sufficient to open them; and it may be readily guessed that I did not wait until I had returned to the camp, to satisfy myself on this subject. They were all from my dearest friends, and my wife; my eyes ran over them quicker than lightning: but I every where found cause for being happy; for I observed that I was beloved and regretted. The tenderest friendship came to seek me in the bosom of my desarts, and to overwhelm my heart with its delights. I could neither speak, sigh, nor weep—I could only remain in the spot where I was, ready to die with joy; but I gradually recovered my senses, and returned to my camp.

When these first transports had subsided, I shut myself up in my tent; and giving free vent to my tears, which afforded me relief, I immediately began to write answers to these letters: I dated mine from *the camp of Auteniqua, the day on which I had killed four elephants*. One of these letters, which contained some in-

teresting details, addressed to a literary friend, was ridiculously handed about some years ago through Paris; and was afterwards lost. I there mentioned several discoveries which contradict opinions hitherto received; and of which I shall give an account in my description of animals.

At night, when my camp was put in order, and the fires kindled, I placed myself, as usual, with my papers before me on a piece of plank, while my Hottentots sat around me.—“ My
 “ friends,” said I, “ you behold one of your
 “ countrymen, whom Mr. Boers has sent to
 “ enquire in what situation I am; and to
 “ know whether your behaviour be agree-
 “ able to what he expects from you, and to
 “ your duty towards me. Behold, added I,
 “ shewing them the first letter that I put my
 “ hand upon—behold the answer which I
 “ have written; and in which I tell him that
 “ you have hitherto behaved like honest and
 “ brave people; and that, during the eight
 “ months we have been travelling together, I
 “ have considered you as the faithful compa-
 “ nions of my enterprise and labours. I tell
 “ him that he needs not be uneasy on my ac-
 “ count, because I have the same confidence
 “ in

“ in you as in myself; and that Mr. Boers’s
“ messenger, on his return to the Cape, may
“ be able to assure your friends and families
“ that you are well, and that you are con-
“ tented and happy, I wish him to be a wit-
“ nefs of the amicable manner in which I treat
“ you; and for this reason I shall distribute
“ to each of you an excellent roll of tobacco:
“ I hope, therefore, that all your pipes will
“ be instantly lighted.”—When my distribu-
tion was finished, each retired to his place,
and smoked at his ease.

I was so overjoyed with the testimonies of affection which I received from my relations and friends, with their sincere protestations of attachment, and with the accurate information which they all gave me in their letters, that, intoxicated with pleasure, forgetting Africa, my hunting excursions, my most beautiful birds, and my elegant collections, and in a word for that moment becoming a child, I devised in order to amuse me what might among certain ranks be called a *festival*, and by those of an inferior class a *farce*.

I had been too generous in distributing my tobacco; and my people had received more than was sufficient to intoxicate them, had I

permitted them to use it as they pleased: but I contrived a method to prevent them. Observing that the third pipe was drawing to a close, as soon as I had drank my tea I ordered a small box to be brought me, which I placed on my knees. I opened it, and never did any quack shew more mysterious dexterity; I drew from it that noble and melodious instrument unknown perhaps at Paris, but very common in some of the provinces, and which is seen in the hands of almost every school-boy and of the vulgar—in a word, a Jews harp. Scarcely had I begun one of those airs played on the Pont-Neuf, when I saw every body with the utmost silence lay down their pipes, and stare at me with their mouths wide open, their arms half extended, and their fingers spread, in the attitude of those people whom some old woman has bewitched. With their ears attentive, and their heads motionless, and inclined to one side, they did not lose the least note of the instrument; till, not being able to restrain their enthusiasm, each insensibly quitted his place, to enjoy the pleasure nearer. I imagined every moment that I should see them all together prostrate themselves before the god who performed this wonder; whilst I could hardly keep

keep

keep from bursting out into a fit of laughter, which would have soon dissipated the whole charm. When I had done, I laid hold of the person who was nearest me, and put the wonderful lute into his hands: I found it very difficult to make him comprehend the method of using it; but having at length made him do it some how or other, I sent him back to his place. As I much doubted whether the rest would be contented if they had not one each, I distributed as many Jews harps as I had Hottentots; and being all collected, some performing well, others badly, and some wretchedly, they regaled me with a concert that might have frightened the Furies. Even my oxen, disturbed by their horrid humming, began to bellow; and all of a sudden my camp became such a scene of noise and riot as was perhaps never seen. In every part it exhibited the true picture of a holiday.

By the air of stupefaction which they exhibited when I myself tried the ridiculous instrument, I was persuaded that simple minds may be struck with astonishment by very simple means; and notwithstanding all that history relates of the great talents of Orpheus, and of the wonders performed by his music, I am always inclined

to allow much honour to those poets who have celebrated this harmonious lyre, which their imagination alone has consecrated.

When I was sufficiently satisfied with the melody of mine, being afraid that these pleasantries might be changed into very serious alarms; and that my oxen, which had not yet forgotten the elephants heads, might absolutely be frightened, and run away, I made a sign with my hand that I had something more to say, and immediately the noise ceased. “ My “ dear friends,” added I, in a simple and affectionate tone, “ I have regaled you with “ the best tobacco you ever tasted; I have “ made you acquainted with a wonderful in- “ strument: we are now going to terminate “ this delightful entertainment with a few “ bumpers of the best French brandy; and “ we shall drink to the health of our families “ and friends.”

This, as I have said, was a real holiday; and, even to my domestic animals, all must share in the general frolic, and act a part in our orgies. Kees at this moment was close by my side; a station which he was remarkably fond of, and which he never failed every evening to assume. Reared like a child of the family, I
had

had almost spoiled him ; for I never eat or drank any thing without allowing him part of it. If I sometimes happened to forget him, as he was a sworn enemy to my absence of thought, he took great care to rouse me from my reveries by patting my hand, or smacking his lips. I have already said that he was remarkably gluttonous ; his temperament led him to extremes ; for he was equally fond of milk, and of strong liquors. I never gave him any of the latter but in a plate, which I generally ordered to be placed before him ; as I observed that every time he had drank it from a glass, his precipitation made him take as much by the nose as by the mouth, so that he coughed and sneezed for whole hours, which incommoded him very much, and might have at length caused him to break some blood vessel.

He was then on the ground close by me, waiting till his allowance should be served up to him ; and following with his eyes the bottle which was passing round, and which stopped at each of my Hottentots. With what impatience did he wait for his turn ! How strongly did he express by his motions and looks that he feared the cruel bottle would be emptied too soon, and would not reach him ! But, alas ! the

unfortunate animal, while licking his lips by anticipation, little knew that he was going to taste it for the last time. But be not dejected, O tender reader! My worthy Kees did not perish, and my brandy was saved for the future.

Having finished my dispatches, and inclosed them in their last cover, at the moment when he beheld with satisfaction that the bottle had performed its round, it came into my head to deceive his expectation by a trick, without any other motive than to surprise him, and to amuse myself. His allowance had been just poured into the plate; and, whilst he was preparing to taste it, I lighted at my candle a slip of paper, which I imperceptibly conveyed under his belly: the brandy instantly caught fire; Kees sent forth a shrill cry, and leaped to the distance of ten paces from me. I tried to recal him, by offering him a thousand caresses; but, following the dictates of his own passion and anger, he immediately disappeared, and retired to rest. Night being now pretty far advanced, I received the compliments and thanks of my people; and all of us slept very soundly.

I must observe that, after this terrible fear
into

into which poor Kees was thrown, all the means I employed to make the animal forget what had passed, and to bring him back to his favourite liquor, were entirely fruitless. He never would taste a drop of it; on the contrary, he seemed to have conceived an implacable aversion to it. When any of my people, for their amusement only, shewed him the bottle, he muttered between his teeth: and sometimes when it was within his reach he would give it a blow; and, instantly climbing a tree, there shew his displeasure in perfect security.

Next day, after having properly rewarded Mr. Boers's intelligent commissioner, I delivered my dispatches to him, and ordered him to set out on his return.

In the morning I began to dissect the head of one of the elephants, in which I left the grinders and the tusks. During this operation, several of my people, who had gone to procure provisions, brought back abundance of flesh, being some of the most succulent parts of the four elephants, which they cut into very long and thin slices, in order that, being exposed to the sun according to our usual custom, they might dry sooner. Some broke the bones into
small

small pieces, and put them in our two kettles; after which they threw boiling water upon them: in proportion as the greafe melted, it floated on the surface; and being collected, my people put it into bladders, and some of the intestines, the better to preserve it. A Hottentot never neglects to make this provision; for, besides what he daily uses at his toilette, he employs it also in cooking different dishes. As for us, we never could find too much of it, as we were obliged to greafe the wheels and traces of our waggons; which, without this precaution, would have been soon so much dried by the sun as to be unfit for service. I myself used it for candles and for my night lamp, which wasted a great deal: for want of spun cotton I made wicks of my neckcloths.

The preparing of this fat took us up a considerable time; and the operation was not quite finished, when some of my people came to inform me that they had observed an enormous print of an elephant's foot, at the distance of an hundred paces from my tent. As the traces were quite fresh, I concluded this monstrous animal could not have gone far; and I immediately set out in search of it. We ranged
the

the forest with great care ; and having come up with it at the end of half an hour, I took aim at it in the proper place : but I was much surpris'd not to see it fall ; my fufee, in all probability, must not have been sufficiently loaded, or the animal was an impenetrable rock. However, when it found itself wounded, it rushed towards us with great fury, as we expected ; but the bushes being thick, and serving us as a kind of rampart, it could do nothing else than stamp the earth, and shew its rage in vain. It lost a great deal of blood ; but it appeared, from the swiftness with which it fled, that it would be of no avail to pursue it. I was extremely sorry for this disappointment, as it was the largest I had ever before seen. It was at least thirteen feet in height ; and, to judge by the eye, its tusks could not have weighed less than an hundred and twenty pounds each.

When our provisions were thoroughly dried and packed up, we departed, in order to return once more towards the fatal Kayman's Hole, where I had passed on the 30th of April, two months before. My Hottentots, whom I had sent to reconnoitre, having informed me that we could cross the chain of
mountains

mountains at one called the *Devil's Head*, we pursued our course that way; and this gave me an opportunity of revisiting the place of my encampment at Pampoen-Kraal, upon which I once more cast a look of regret.— When we arrived at the bottom of the mountain, I ordered the elephant's head I had dissected, its tusks, and all my preserved birds and insects, to be put upon one of the carriages; and again leaving my camp to the care of faithful servants, I repaired with my waggon to Mr. Mulder's house; for, as I was obliged to return in order to find a passage, I had approached very near to his habitation. Having engaged to transmit my packet and fresh letters to Mr. Boers by the first opportunity, I at length took leave of this respectable family, whom I was never again to see, and went back to my camp.

Next morning, very early, we ascended the mountain; not without much difficulty and fatigue. But this was nothing in comparison of what we experienced in descending on the other side: the view of it indeed frightened me. As soon as we perceived it, we all looked at one another without uttering a single syllable, as people unexpectedly caught in a trap:

we could not however remain on the summit; and it was necessary that we should descend either on the one side or the other. If we escaped from Charybdis, we were still exposed to the danger of falling into Scylla. Always persuaded that patience and precaution will overcome the greatest obstacles, I could not believe that this enterprize would be more difficult for my caravan, than the passage of the Alps had formerly been to numerous armies; and I immediately prepared, as one may say, for taking this dangerous leap. I took care to make my carriages descend one after the other; and that they should be each drawn by no more than two oxen. I caused the first to advance in good order, escorted by all my people: but we were obliged to pass over pointed rocks, detached one from the other; which, forming so many high steps, gave the waggon such jolts, as almost broke it to pieces. This however was not what appeared to us to be most dangerous; for, by the means of ropes affixed to the wheels, we raised them up, or suffered them to roll, as occasion might require: it was the smooth places, and the slippery declivities, that made us shudder. At every moment I thought I saw the carriage and
the

the oxen hurried to the brink of the precipice; while, on the side opposite to the declivities, we were pulling with all our force the ropes fastened to the waggon. Our address being crowned with complete success, we ascended to bring down the other two carriages; and, after a considerable time, the whole caravan arrived safe at the bottom of the mountain. It appeared to me that Nature had opposed this barrier, as an obstacle to prevent me from entering on this new country; and that it was here she had concealed her most beautiful treasures: on this account I had been so much the more incited to overcome every thing that stood in my way. I knew that this route from Auteniqua to the Ange-Kloof was considered by the natives as impracticable; and that no person before me had ever attempted it with carriages. This was sufficient to pique my vanity; and I had the good fortune to pass these rocks: but, as if it had been necessary that punishment should immediately follow such a rash attempt, I found myself in a most frightful and gloomy desert.

This was no longer the delightful and fertile country of Auteniqua: the mountain which we had crossed, or rather from which

we had precipitated ourselves, formed a wall of separation between it and us for ever. It no longer presented those majestic forests which we had so long admired ; for the whole back part of the chain was hideous and bare, destitute of trees, and without the least appearance of verdure. Another chain, parallel to this, seemed involuntarily to bear a few paltry woods, which had some resemblance to that named *Wage-Boom*. This wood, by inclosing the country, and leaving only one opening, has made the name of *Ange-Kloof* be given to this long valley.

My intention being to direct my course towards the north, I continued my journey for seven hours, keeping along that cursed valley ; and we again crossed the *Queur-Boom*, which here is but a moderate stream ; whereas two months before it had made me tremble, when, to search for my bald buzzard, I threw myself into it at its mouth with too much precipitation, and narrowly escaped being drowned. Pursuing our melancholy route, after several encampments no less tedious, and a march of twenty-two hours, I passed another river, called, and very justly, *Krom-Rivier*, or the Crooked River. It formed so many turns and

2 windings,

windings, that we continually found it in our way: I crossed it ten times. In proportion as we advanced, the two chains of mountains seemed to approach each other on purpose, and the country to become considerably narrower. The valley was now only a marshy hollow; which, for full six leagues, occasioned great fatigue to my oxen. We once more had a view of the *Krom-Rivier*; but this was for the last time: it took its course towards the east, where it throws itself into the sea; and we at length turned altogether towards the north. Here I left one of my horses that was sick, and which could not follow us; as I was unwilling to wait in hope of a cure, which perhaps might not succeed. I thought it would be much better to leave the care of his preservation to nature.

Along the Ange-Kloof there are a few wretched houses, which have more resemblance to the dens of wild beasts than to the habitations of men. The inhabitants breed very few cattle. When the east wind blows across this wild country, it is excessively cold: I was sensible of it from the very first to the last day. Every morning we had ice and white frosts. I do not exactly know the length of this
dismal

dismal valley; but I am certain that I employed forty-six hours in going through it.

After advancing seven or eight leagues, I crossed *Diep-Rivier*, the Deep River; and ten leagues farther, on the 7th of August, we encamped upon the borders of that of *Gamtoos*. It derives its name from an unfortunate captain who in a storm was shipwrecked near its mouth.

Half an hour before we arrived here, we were obliged to descend another very steep and dangerous mountain, by which the bellies of two of my oxen burst, so that their bowels came out. This loss was occasioned by the person who conducted my second waggon, and who had imprudently quitted it.

The beautiful aspect of this new country made us ample amends for the melancholy moments we had several days experienced, amidst the detestable roads and the ice of the valley of the *Ange-Kloof*.

The first night I encamped, towards midnight, before I had fallen asleep in my tent, I thought I heard an unusual noise: and listening with attention, I found I was not deceived; for I could distinguish the sound of shouting and singing, which seemed to proceed from

no great distance. I immediately called my people, who told me that they also heard a confused noise; but we did not know whether it was occasioned by Hottentots or Caffres. I had great reason to be afraid of the latter; not that they thirst more after human blood, as ignorant writers have said; but because the cruel manner in which they are treated by the planters, incites them more to war, and because the right of avenging injuries is natural to man. I shall soon relate several facts, which will prove, better than vain reasonings, whether a savage or an European is the most barbarous.

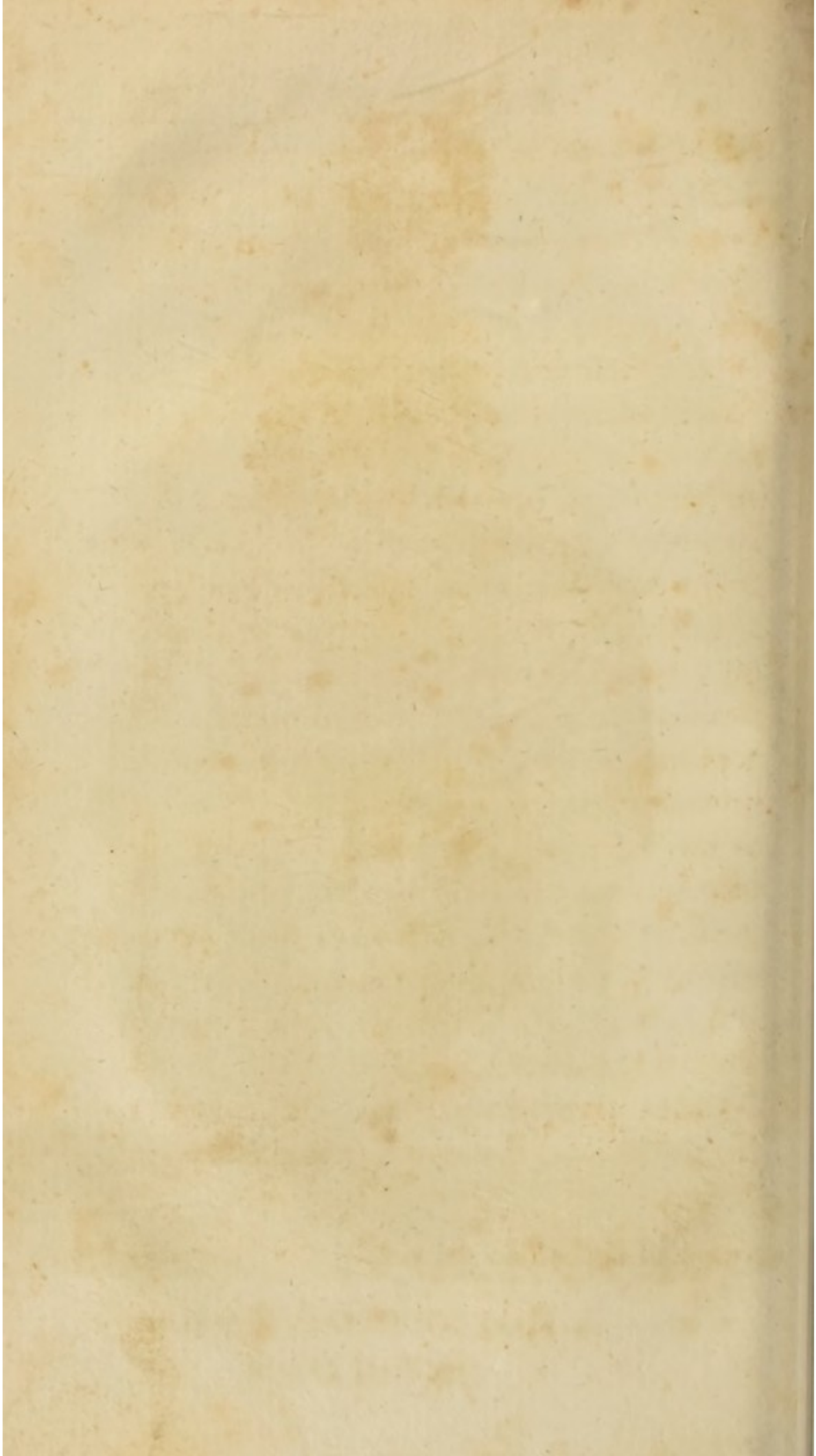
As it was probable that I might be confounded among the victims of their vengeance, I ordered all my people to be under arms, and we removed to some distance from our camp. The farther we marched the noise became more distinct; and we observed some fires. I could not however persuade myself that they were Caffres; for they would have betrayed themselves: artifice in vain borrows the darkness of night, it must also borrow its silence.

Having placed myself in ambush, that I might be able to surprize them, in case they
should



A HOTTENTOT WOMAN
in full Drefs.

North 50



should pass that way to plunder my camp, I detached two of my people to take a nearer view of them; who immediately returned to inform me that we had been alarmed without any cause; and that they were only a horde of Hottentots, who were singing and making merry. This intelligence freed me from my uneasiness, and I was even happy in my adventure, which seemed to promise next morning a very interesting interview. We therefore returned to our camp, and slept very soundly.

Early in the morning I was again awakened by a warbling, which afforded me no less pleasure. It proceeded from birds which I did not know, and which I had never before heard. I found them most beautiful. I was dazzled by the brilliant and variable plumage of the copper-coloured starling, the amethyst-coloured throat of the *certhia flaveola**, the couroucou †, the king's-hunter, and of a great many others: I observed also several species which I had never before seen.

Game appeared to me to be very abundant in this place. I saw, above all, innumerable

* In the original *sucrier*; called also by Brisson *grimperau*; and by Sir Hans Sloan, in his *Natural History of Jamaica*, *the black and yellow bird*.

† *Curucui*, a Brazilian bird. *Trogon* Linn. T.

flocks of pheasants, and a few of those antelopes called bos-bock, pass before me. The facility I found in procuring all these animals, of which I had never seen so great plenty any where, inspired me with the greatest joy.

Whilst I amused myself with firing at the birds, I permitted my Hottentots to go and pay a visit to their countrymen. An acquaintance was, in a little time, formed with this savage horde ; I myself in my turn went up to them, and we were soon both satisfied with one another. Their women every evening brought us a large quantity of milk ; for these people were very rich in cattle. They made me a present of a few sheep, to which they added a noble pair of oxen for my carriages ; and as I was not willing to remain in their debt, I gave them some earthen ware, a small quantity of tobacco, and a few knives. All my people insinuated themselves insensibly into the kraal ; each then had his doxy, and the female squadron came and established themselves among us during the whole time of our abode.

I learned that at the mouth of this river I might meet with some hippopotami, or river horses, none of which I had ever seen. As I was only five or six miles distant from the sea, and on that account had it in my power, perhaps,

to be acquainted for the first time with this species of quadrupede, I set out with the utmost speed. The river however was so broad, and its banks were so encumbered with large trees, that my labour and researches were in vain. I spent whole days in walking along its shores; and in the night time I placed myself on the watch, in hopes of seeing some of them come forth from the water to feed; but I never had even that satisfaction.

To make me amends, elephants and buffaloes, especially the latter, were so common, and easy to be killed, that we had more provisions than we could use. I supplied the former husbands of our women with great abundance: being better armed than they, I hunted only for them; so that I obliged them in every manner possible. Thus, amidst the desarts of Africa, I introduced the customs and polite manners of the most civilized nations of Europe. I must here remark, that if some historians have said that the Hottentots are of a jealous disposition, those whom we met with were not susceptible of that cruel passion. Had I afterwards found any hordes subject to it, I should have mentioned this circumstance with the same veracity.

My engaging behaviour had secured me the friendship and confidence of these honest savages; and they entertained so high an opinion of me, that they never undertook any thing without consulting me. One day having come to complain that the hyænas of the country ravaged and destroyed their flocks, I was the more inclined to believe what they said, as one of my oxen had just been devoured by the same animals. Charmed at having an opportunity of hunting these ferocious beasts along with them, I appointed next day for our excursion; and early in the morning they arrived at my camp, to the number of about an hundred men, all well armed with bows and arrows. To these I added all my hunters; and, putting myself at their head, we beat the whole country round with our dogs. With such a number of people I hoped to make a general slaughter among these destructive animals; but three shots which we fired, and which killed three of them, had apparently dispersed all the rest. After this we saw none of them; for the noise had so frightened them, that, from that moment till the time of our departure, we heard no more of the hyænas than if they had never existed.

Some days after we had an alarm which might have become serious. In the middle of the night we were all at the same time awakened by a frightful noise, proceeding from a troop of elephants, which in passing us almost brushed against our camp : in number they might be about an hundred. On this occasion I was under such dreadful apprehensions, which my people shared along with me, that we did not think proper to insult this formidable battalion, nor to dispute their passage. Had I attempted it, my camp, my animals, my carriages, and all my people, would in a moment have been crushed to atoms. They however did not stop, and my camp remained perfectly safe.

At the break of day we received a visit from our neighbours, who had been exposed to the same terrors. They came expressly to inform me that, if I should ever again meet with the same species, I ought to be very cautious not to fire at them ; as the elephants we had seen were extremely dangerous, and much more mischievous than the rest. They assured me that their flesh was good for nothing ; that it occasioned ulcers to those who eat it ; and, in a word, that they were red elephants.—Red elephants ! This

word alone inspired me with a strong desire to see them, and seemed to promise the acquirement of fresh knowledge; for I had never read or heard that there were red elephants.

When these animals retired into the woods, they had reached a deep hollow, surrounded by enormous bushes, where it would not have been prudent to approach too near them. I therefore ordered some Hottentots to file off behind, and to form a ring; bidding them set fire, at certain distances, to the dry grass; and to discharge some shots, to make them pass by the bottom of a large rock, upon which I had posted myself with my best marksmen, and where we could be exposed to no kind of danger.

My rangers seconded my efforts in a wonderful manner; for as soon as the fires and the noise of the reports had spread the alarm, the whole troop, frightened, presented themselves before me. A dozen of shots, which they did not expect, made them retreat with precipitation, and in the greatest disorder. I should in vain attempt to describe the numberless signs which they exhibited of their fury: on one side they saw themselves pursued by the flames of the bushes, which gained on
them

them behind; and on the other by my shots, which I directed to the only passage that remained for them to escape death. They agitated their bodies as much as the enormity and heaviness of them would permit; while their deafening cries, and the crashing of the trees which they broke in retreating or flying, formed such a dreadful tumult, that the sight of it frightened me, though I was sheltered by my rock, and could not be disturbed in any manner. We wounded one, which for a moment separated from the troop; but it soon joined them; and being confounded with the rest, it would have been very difficult to take aim at it again. From the nature of its bellowing, I imagine it was mortally wounded, and that it could not long survive; but we did not think proper to go immediately in search of it, being firmly persuaded that it could not escape us.

In this new kind of hunting I had no other view than to procure one of these animals; which were said to be of a different species from all those I had before seen. Satisfied with having wounded one, and considering it as certainly dead, I resolved not to go in search of it till the next morning: I consequently
recalled

recalled all my people, and we returned to our camp. I had indeed been struck with the reddish colour of these animals; and I found this phenomenon extraordinary: but having remarked that the ground upon which we then were had almost the same tint; and reflecting that the elephant is fond of wallowing in moist and marshy places, and even spends a part of its time in this manner, I doubted whether this colour could be owing to any other cause, and whether it was not purely factitious.

Next morning, however, I was better convinced, when, on returning to the wood with my people, I found the elephant dead. Every body was persuaded that our neighbours were deceived; and though they had mentioned that it was dangerous to eat of this species, they cut off the trunk for me, and reserved for themselves the other parts of the animal. I afterwards met several planters, who believed also that there were red elephants; and whatever pains I took to free them from their error, I could not convince them; so much were they prejudiced in favour of their own opinion.

The one I killed, which was a female, was nine feet three inches in height: one of its tusks weighed thirteen pounds, and the other
ten.

ten. The elephant, whether male or female, has always the left tusk shorter and slenderer than the right; it is also more smooth and shining. To account for this difference it must be observed, as I have already said, that it is always from left to right that the animal conveys its food with its trunk to its mouth. The brambles or branches on which it feeds occasion a continual friction against that tusk, whilst the right is scarcely ever touched: besides, it is with the same tusk that it is accustomed to found the earth; and by the size of the holes which it makes one may judge of its bulk,

When I describe the elephant, I shall speak of its manners, passions, and tastes; and on this subject I shall advance nothing but what I have seen.

I began to take great pleasure in this kind of hunting, which I found much less dangerous than amusing. I could not then conceive, nor have I been since able to comprehend, why authors and travellers have filled with so many falsehoods the relations which they have written of the strength and sagacity of these animals; and given scope to their imaginations respecting the dangers to which those who pursue

purſue them are expoſed. It muſt indeed be allowed that, if any one is ſo thoughtleſs and fool-hardy as to attack an elephant on plain open ground, he is certain of being deſtroyed if he miſſes his aim ; but if the hunter knows how to take his advantages, all the ſtrength of the animal muſt yield to his coolneſs and addreſs. I confeſs that the appearance of an elephant cauſes an aſtoniſhment which at firſt renders one almoſt ſtupid ; it is awful and terrible : but, with a little courage and compoſure, one ſoon becomes accuſtomed to its aſpect. Before he attempts this grand kind of hunting, a prudent man ſhould endeavour to examine the character, the gait, and the reſources of the animal ; and he ought, above all, according to circumſtances, to ſecure ſome places of retreat, to ſhelter him from danger, in caſe he ſhould be purſued after having miſſed. By means of theſe precautions, this ſpecies of hunting is only an amuſing exerciſe ; a game in which there is fifty to one to be laid in favour of the player.

Whiſt I remained in this canton I varied my encampments as well as my occupations ; but I always was much attached to the delightful

lightful banks of the Gamtoos. I here made an ample harvest of rarities, and my collection increased very sensibly.

On the 11th of September, at six in the morning, we decamped. I had informed the neighbouring horde of my intention, and it was with the utmost regret that they saw us depart. As for me, I could not leave them without being sensibly affected. These good people had inspired me with a very strong attachment. "Can so much mildness and simplicity," said I, "excite so great contempt? Are these then the savages of Africa, who thirst after the blood of Europeans, and who cannot be approached without horror?" This goodness and affability gave me the greater confidence, as I was then really in the midst of a desert, and as nothing seemed to threaten me with danger in future. All this country, which is inhabited only by hordes of the Gonaquas, differs essentially from that belonging to the Hottentots of the colony. These people have no direct intercourse one with another: the former are called *savage Hottentots*. Before I proceed any farther I shall make a few observations, without which one could only

only form very imperfect ideas respecting them.

They no longer compose, as formerly, one nation, uniform in their manners, customs, and pursuits. The establishment of the Dutch colony was a fatal epoch, which disunited them all, and occasioned those differences by which they are at present distinguished.

In 1652, when Riebeck the surgeon, on his return from India, opened the eyes of the Directors of the Company respecting the importance of an establishment at the Cape, they wisely thought that such an enterprize could not be better executed than by the genius which had planned it. Furnished therefore with ample powers, and being provided with provisions, and every thing that could contribute to the success of his project, Riebeck soon arrived at Table Bay. Like an able politician, and a skilful negociator, he employed every method in his power to secure the friendship of the Hottentots; and he covered with honey the edge of the poisoned bowl. Gained over by powerful allurements, these savages, the unlimited masters of all this part of Africa, did not perceive how many of
their

their rights, and how much authority, repose, and happiness, this guilty profanation deprived them of. Indolent by nature, true citizens of the world, and little addicted to agriculture, they were not uneasy that strangers should seize on a small corner of useless land, which was often uninhabited. They thought that whether a little farther, or a little nearer, it was of no importance where their flocks, the only riches worthy of engaging their attention, sought for their food, provided they could find it. The avaricious policy of the Dutch had a view of great hopes from so peaceful a beginning; and as it is readier, and knows better than any other to embrace the advantages offered it by fortune, it did not fail to finish the work, by holding out two very seducing allurements to the Hottentots—tobacco and strong liquors. From that moment these unhappy savages bid adieu to their liberty, and to that pride which is inspired by a sense of those rights which mankind inherit from nature. Attracted by these two baits, they approached as near as they could to the source from which they received them; whilst the Dutch, who for a pipe of tobacco, or a glass of brandy, could procure an ox, paid every attention in their
power

power to so valuable neighbours. The colony insensibly increasing, and acquiring more strength, that formidable power which dictated laws to all this part of Africa, and removed to a great distance every thing that attempted to oppose its eager ambition, was seen to rise on foundations that could no longer be shaken. The fame of its prosperity was soon spread, and drew thither every day a number of new settlers. It may be easily judged that, according to the usual practice, founded upon a logic which destroys the laws of property, so sacred and so respectable, the will of the stronger party was a sufficient title for it to extend its possessions. The Dutch seized indiscriminately at several times, and even without having occasion for them, on all the lands which government, or individuals favoured by government, thought proper or found convenient.

The Hottentots, thus confined, pressed, and harassed on all sides, divided themselves, and pursued plans entirely opposite. Those who were still interested in the preservation of their flocks, penetrated among the mountains towards the north and north-east; but these were the fewer number. The rest, ruined by a few
glasses

glaffes of brandy, and a few rolls of tobacco, impoverished and stripped of every thing, did not think of quitting their country; but absolutely renouncing their manners, as well as their ancient and happy condition, of which they have no remembrance at present, they basely sold their services to the whites, who of submissive strangers having suddenly become haughty masters, and enterprising planters, have not sufficient hands to turn to advantage their immense riches; and who ease themselves of the painful and multiplied labours requisite on their plantations, by laying them upon these unfortunate Hottentots, more and more degenerated and corrupted.

A few paltry and miserable hordes have indeed established themselves, and live as they can, in different cantons of the colony; but they have not even the power of choosing their own chief. As they are in the district of government, and under its authority, the right of naming him belongs entirely to the governor. The person whom he chooses repairs to the town, and receives a large cane, much like that of our couriers; but with this difference, that the knob of it is only of pure copper: after which a crescent or gorget,

formed of the same metal, upon which is engraved in large letters the word *capitein*, is put round his neck as a badge of his dignity. From that moment his melancholy horde, which for a long time has lost its national name, assumes that of the new chief who has been set over it. They will then say, for example, the horde of captain Kees, who becomes to the governor a new creature, a new spy, and a new slave, and to his own countrymen a new tyrant.

The governor himself is never personally acquainted with those whom he appoints. It is generally the planter nearest the horde who solicits and determines the nomination for one of his own creatures; because he trusts that a low person whom he has in this manner patronized will not be ungrateful, and that he will have all his vassals ready at his service when necessity may require. Thus without any preliminary information, and even without any regard to justice, a helpless and feeble horde are obliged to receive laws from a man often incapable of commanding them; and thus does the interest of one individual prevail over the general good both in great and little affairs: and it is thus that the revolutions of a
republic,

republic, and the puerile election of the syndic of a village, proceeding from the same principle, are equally similar in their effects.

Such in general are the Hottentots known under the name of the Hottentots of the Cape, or Hottentots of the colonies: but we must not confound with them the savage Hottentots, who by way of derision are called the *Jackal-Hottentots*; and who, far removed from the arbitrary Dutch government, still preserve in the desert which they inhabit all the purity of their primitive manners.

I was now arrived at that point in my journey, where having no more intercourse with the former, whom I had left behind me, I found myself in the middle of the latter; but it is not necessary that I should here enter particularly into all the different marks by which they are distinguished. To convey some idea of the character of the savage Hottentots, and of what I had to expect from them, it will be sufficient to offer one remark, which is a truth confirmed by experience. In all countries wherever the savages are absolutely separated from civilized nations, and live sequestered, their manners are mild; but they change and become corrupted the nearer

they approach them. When the Hottentots live amongst them, it is very rare that they do not become monsters. This assertion, however mortifying it may be, is nevertheless a true principle, which is scarcely liable to one exception. When to the northward of the Cape I found myself under the tropic, among remote nations; when I saw whole hordes surround me with signs of surprise, and of the most childish curiosity, and, approaching me with confidence, stroke my beard, my hair, and my face with their hands—"I have nothing to fear from these people," said I to myself; "this is the first time they ever saw a white man."

I have entered into this digression with the greater readiness, as it is of some importance to fix the reader's attention to this part, which is the most interesting of all my excursions and travels. I eagerly return to it; and I always experience a new pleasure in relating these simple but delightful adventures.

The whole horde, who could with difficulty separate from me, accompanied me as far as the river *Louri*, four leagues from the Gamtoos; where we stopped to take leave of our good friends, and to regale them with some glasses of brandy,

brandy, and a few pipes of tobacco. The women, who during my residence in the neighbourhood of their kraals had attached themselves to my Hottentots, and who perhaps regretted a little the loss of my kitchen, absolutely insisted upon following us. But I had often remarked, though I pretended not to observe it, that my people had several times quarrelled; and the consequence was, that they had relaxed in their service: on this account I obstinately persisted in refusing to suffer these women to accompany us, or to remain with me. One only appeared to me to be very active: I found that she took great care of my cows and my goats, and that she washed my linen well. These reasons concerned my own person; but another motive pleaded very powerfully in her favour. My faithful Klaas had conceived a violent affection for her: to separate them would have been to tear two hearts at once, to be severe without any advantage, and to be cruel towards one who would have sacrificed his life for me on every occasion. By a policy, therefore, contrary to that which any other would have adopted, I resolved to retain her. This mark of preference shewed how far I distinguished Klaas from his companions;

whether it proceeded from injustice or weakness, I could not resist the desire of making at least one happy, since all could not be so; and I afterwards had no cause to repent of my conduct. To this woman I gave the name of *Ragel*. Those services which she had always performed were assigned to her; and she attended me every where till the end of my journey.

After the departure of the horde, we continued our route; but a violent storm obliged us to stop at *Galgebos*. It was five in the afternoon when we halted: the place was far from being destitute of beauties, and I would gladly have remained here some time; but we could not find a single rivulet. We therefore crossed the river *Van-Staade*, at the distance of two leagues; and unyoked at seven on the borders of a lake, where we could procure water sufficient for our whole caravan.

To how many useful processes and inventions does not chance sometimes give birth! It often serves us better, and by means much more simple, than any of those suggested by our own lights, our combinations, or our knowledge. Of this truth I received a convincing proof even in the place in which I had stopped.

The

The horde from whom I separated had come in the morning to bring to my camp a large supply of milk; with which I filled a pitcher almost to the brim, and placed it in my waggon, intending to use it on my journey for quenching my thirst. The storm by which we were overtaken had so cooled me, that I did not touch it during the day: but in the evening, after our fires were kindled, being desirous of distributing it among my people, I found that it was become sour. I therefore ordered it to be put into a vessel to regale my dogs; but I was much astonished to find it converted into most excellent and beautiful butter, for which I was indebted to the jolting of my waggon. This discovery, which I afterwards put in practice during the rest of my journey, procured me, besides fresh butter, a most salutary supply of buttermilk, which I frequently made use of, and which doubtless contributed to preserve me vigorous and in good health.

The day following we were prevented from again setting out by a second storm, which was really dreadful. The hail that fell was as large as pullets eggs; and my cattle suffered so much, that I was under great uneasiness for them. One of my she goats was so severely

wounded, that I was obliged to kill her : this indeed was a real loss. I regretted her much, for she was about to bring forth young.

The weather at length changing, we quitted our lake; and about noon, after crossing two rivers, the great and the little *Swaar-Kops*, I ordered my oxen to be unyoked on the banks of the latter. Having observed the prints of some animal's feet with which I was not acquainted, my people, to whom I shewed them, assured me that they were not those of the rhinoceros. Whilst my camp was arranging, I followed these traces; but night coming on made me lose them, and I returned without having seen any thing. On this river, which was pretty considerable, we found another horde of savages. The kraal was composed of nine or ten huts, inhabited only by fifty or sixty persons at most. These people advised me not to cross the river Boffiman, which passes near this place: they said it would be much better to turn off to the left, and to push farther into the interior part of the country, to avoid a numerous troop of Caffres, who often alarmed that canton, and carried fire and sword along with them; that nothing was seen every where around but disorder and pillage, fields ravaged,
and

and habitations laid waste and reduced to ashes; that the proprietors, to avoid sudden and certain death, had abandoned their possessions, dragging behind them a few feeble remains of their flocks; and that, in a word, I ought not to approach the country of Caffraria. So alarming a caution, I must own, at first startled me a little: I immediately assembled my people, and we deliberated what plan it would be most prudent to pursue. I was very desirous of founding the disposition of every one. Their unanimous opinion, which coincided very well with my private intention, was, that we should first avoid, but not in such a manner as to retard us too much, this dangerous troop of Caffres; that, as we were very near them, we ought always to be on our guard both night and day; that, to prevent being surpris'd, we should never encamp but in the open country; that our oxen, when out at pasture, should be protected by four men, armed with fufees; that my horses should never quit the stakes to which they were tied, that in case of an alarm they might be always at hand; and that my large fufee, well loaded, should remain at the camp; and that three shots, fired at equal intervals, should be a signal

nal for those, who on account of their different occupations might be obliged to go to too great a distance from the common center, to rejoin the main body.

When we had taken these precautions, and given proper instructions for their being observed, I mounted my horse; and, followed by two of my people well armed, made a strict search every where around, to discover whether any of the Caffres were ranging in the neighbourhood, ready to fire upon the first that I might see concealed with a view to surprize us, in case I should find it impossible to take him prisoner. Not one however appeared. Having advanced a little farther after dinner, I perceived that the river, as far as its mouth, was bordered with prickly trees; that the ground near it was sandy, and covered with underwood; and that its environs abounded with game, some of which I killed for provision. As we saw no appearance that could give us any uneasiness, I was convinced we had then nothing to fear from these Caffres, said to be so terrible. I ordered my camp to be moved next morning, and we quitted the *Swaar-Kops*. The horde of Hottentots, terrified merely by the name of these cruel avengers,

ers, proposed that we should establish ourselves at a considerable distance thence, that we might not be in the neighbourhood of Caffra-ria; and, when they saw me depart, they asked permission to follow me, and to put themselves under the protection of my camp. This request I readily complied with; and though at bottom I was overjoyed at their proposal, I artfully made a merit of it, as much with a design to keep them dependant upon me, as to give spirits to my people by this formidable body, and to support their courage. Nothing more fortunate could have occurred; I reinforced my troop; and, besides the particular resources of this horde, I had the advantage of my artillery, which could oppose whole clouds of assagays *, and baffle all the efforts of an army of savages, should I be well seconded. In less than two hours all the huts were taken down and packed up, and with other effects put on the backs of our spare oxen.

I first made the half of the men belonging to this horde set out before me, with all their cattle, giving them two of my people well armed to escort them. They carried with

* A kind of lance which the Caffres use with much dexterity.

them also one of my horses; that, in case of any accident, they might be able to give me earlier intelligence of it.

An hour after I ordered my relays, cows, sheep, goats, and all the women of the horde, with their children mounted upon their oxen, to follow them, and a party of their men to march behind. This company was escorted also by six of my chaffeurs. My three carriages, with the rest of my people, closed the rear. I myself, mounted on my best horse, in order that I might have my eye every where, rode backwards and forwards on the wings, and from right to left, continually afraid of being suddenly surpris'd; for I can safely assert that, had the leader been once dismounted, the rest of the caravan would have been expos'd to the most horrid butchery, and must have become the prey of the moment.

I was completely armed. In the side pockets of my breeches I carried a pair of double-barrelled pistols; I had another pair of the same kind at my girdle; my double-barrelled fusée was slung at the bow of my saddle; and a large sabre hung by my side, and a poniard or dagger from the button-hole of my vest: I could therefore fire ten times almost in a moment.

moment. This arsenal incommoded me considerably at first; but I never quitted it, both on account of my own safety, and because by this precaution I seemed to increase the confidence of my people. My arms, doubtless, appeared to them to correspond with my resolutions; and, full of this idea, each pursued his way with the utmost composure, leaving to me the care of defending them.

This caravan on its march exhibited a singular and amusing spectacle—I may even say grand. The turns which it was obliged to make in following the windings of the bushes and rocks, continually gave it new forms; and these points of view varied every instant. Sometimes it entirely disappeared from my sight; and all of a sudden, from the summit of a small eminence, I would again discover at a distance my van-guard slowly advancing towards a mountain; while the main body, who without confusion, and in fine order, were following the traces of those who had preceded them, was almost below me. The women suckled their children, and gave them food and drink seated on their oxen by them; some wept, others sung or laughed; and the men, smoking a social pipe, conversed together,
having

having no longer the appearance of people terrified at the approach of an enemy.

Entertaining a little more uneasiness than these walking machines, I was fully sensible of my critical situation; and on the back of my beast indulged in philosophical reveries. At the distance of three thousand leagues from Paris, the only person of my species among so many natives, surrounded and watched by the most ferocious animals, I could not help being filled with admiration, to see myself conducting, for the first time, in the deserts of Africa, a savage horde, who, submitting voluntarily to my orders, executed them blindly, and committed entirely to me the care of their preservation. Taken collectively, I had nothing to fear from them; nevertheless I saw some among them who would have made me tremble, if, in single combat, strength alone had been to decide the contest: but at bottom I was fully convinced, that here, as well as elsewhere, it was not the strongest but the most skilful that commanded.

We had not advanced very far, when my dogs, which were ranging through the bushes on every side, began to stop and to bark. My companions were instantly filled with terror; imagining

imagining that we had fallen in with some Caffres, placed in ambush to intercept us; but I paid very little attention to their absurd reasoning. I thought it was impossible that my advanced guard could have passed, without being attacked; and I perceived that they were peaceably pursuing their journey, without the least appearance of disorder. I therefore put spurs to my horse; and advancing through the bushes, was much astonished to find only a porcupine, surrounded by my dogs, from which it was endeavouring to defend itself. I immediately killed it; and fearing lest the report of my musket might lead my people into an error, and induce them to take some rash step, I returned towards them, and by ridiculing their timidity convinced them that I was not daunted by trifles.

The porcupine defends itself in a wonderful manner. Its quills shelter it from every attempt; and, when a dog approaches, it artfully eludes him, makes its attack on his flank, and, when he is once wounded he never again returns to the charge. Some of the quills always remain sticking in his flesh, which damp his courage, and cause him to betake himself to flight. One of my Hottentots, who had
been

been wounded in the leg by one of them, was ill for more than six months.

Mr. Mallard, an officer belonging to the regiment of Pondicherry, at the Cape of Good Hope, being pricked in hunting one of these animals, had nearly lost his leg by the wound; and, notwithstanding all the care that was taken of him, he suffered dreadful tortures for more than four months, during the first of which he was confined to his bed.

The porcupine, however, is excellent eating; and its flesh is often served up on the genteel tables at the Cape, after it has been carefully smoked.

After travelling an hour and a half, I ordered my caravan to halt; but we stopped no longer than was necessary to collect a sufficient provision of salt on the borders of a brackish lake which we found in our way; and, two leagues farther, I advanced before the rest, to visit a plantation which I perceived on our left. I found that it had been plundered and burnt by the Caffres; for nothing remained of it but some pieces of the walls, black with smoke, and calcined by the flames: a very dismal appearance in the bosom of a desert!

An

An hour after, my advanced guard was stopped by the Kouga, on the banks of which we erected our tents.

The Kouga, properly speaking, is only a rivulet, but we found scarcely any water in it; there was only a small quantity in some hollow places, in which we caught abundance of excellent tortoises, though of a very small size; the largest did not weigh above three pounds. Before the commencement of night I ordered an abbatis to be constructed of the branches of trees, to form a defence round my cattle: and, whilst this was executing, the women were employed in collecting whatever dry wood they could find in the neighbourhood, to supply us with fuel; as it was indispensably necessary to kindle fires in different places, lest we should be surpris'd by the Caffres, or by lions, which were now very common in these cantons. We remained here till the 20th, when we began to be in want of provisions; but I was so fortunate as to kill three buffaloes and two bubales. On the banks of the rivulet I found some Guinea-hens, exactly like those of Europe. When boiled a long time, they were excellent; but when roasted or broiled, they were good for nothing. They were ap-
VOL. I. U parently

parently too old. I found also some new species of very pretty birds; and, among others, a barbet, of which I shall give some coloured figures.

After this we went up the banks of the Kouga, still in the same order as we had hitherto observed; but we had scarcely travelled an hour, when my advanced guard stopping, sent to inform me that they had discovered the prints of men's feet. Struck with terror, they imagined them to be the traces of the Caffres, and they now saw nothing around them but these savages. Having hastened to the spot, I observed that the traces seemed very fresh; and as this discovery began now to become very serious, I was sensible that we ought to put ourselves in the best state of defence, without loss of time. I therefore ordered the whole caravan to halt; and, whilst my people were busily employed in forming a fence round the oxen, and in arranging my camp, followed by my two intrepid chasseurs, I set out to reconnoitre. After following the traces for an hour, they conducted us to a place where we found the remains of a fire not quite extinguished, and a few mutton bones, which had been lately gnawed.

gnawed. From the fire it appeared evident that the savages who had stopped here, had also passed the night on the same spot; but, on seeing the gnawed bones, I could scarcely allow myself to believe that they had been Caffres, because these people never breed sheep. It was, however, possible that they might have procured them by plunder, or have found them among their enemies. During the uncertainty into which these reflections had thrown me, I resolved to advance still farther; until being at length tired of traversing and ranging the country, finding that these traces led us too far from our route, and conducted us to one directly opposite to that which we ought to pursue, I returned to my camp. The night following we met with little disturbance; but the next day a most dreadful storm of rain obliged us to remain closely shut up in our tents; and the day after we were under the disagreeable necessity of crossing fourteen times successively the unlucky Kouga, which every quarter of an hour stopped our journey, and above all things shook my carriages dreadfully upon the stones and fragments of rock which it carried along with it in its course. This fatiguing interruption, so often repeated, compelled us to

pass the night near a small torrent called *Drooge Rivier*, the Dry River: for our cattle were so harassed that they were not in a condition to carry us any farther; and the circumstances of the moment did not permit us to make long marches. Whenever we halted, a great deal of time was necessary to arrange our camp; to prepare food for about an hundred animals; to boil provisions for a still greater number of people; to watch over the safety of all these individuals; to collect wood for making fires, and to keep them burning during the whole night. These details became very laborious; but they were nevertheless indispensable.

That evening our dogs thought proper to be our purveyors. The whole country was filled with Guinea-fowls, which at sun-set perched in hundreds on the trees that surrounded us, in order to pass the night. They made a continual and disagreeable cackling: but it was of some use to us, for these simple birds discovered themselves by it; and our dogs, which heard them, began to run round and to bark at the bottoms of the trees where they were seated. These Guinea-fowls endeavoured to make their escape; but the weight of their
bodies,

bodies, and the shortness of their wings, not permitting them to fly above the trees, and being obliged on this account to run and to leap on the ground, our dogs watched for them in their passage; and, seizing them with their teeth, soon destroyed them. This method of hunting procured us abundance of these animals, without wasting a single grain of powder. Next morning I wished to pursue the same plan; but these birds, better instructed by the fate of the preceding evening, did not descend. One discharge, however, of my fusée, produced all the effect I expected.

During the night, we heard the distant roaring of some lions.

On the 23d, after a march of some hours, we arrived at the large and beautiful river of *Sondag*. Its channel was very full; the weather seemed to threaten rain; and the dread of being again stopped by an inundation, made us resolve to cross it on rafts. Having ordered a quantity of wood necessary for this purpose to be cut down, and what might be requisite for inclosing our cattle in the usual manner, when we should encamp, I embarked my carriages piece by piece, with the greater part of my effects, and the half of my people, who erected

our tents on the other side, under the direction of Swanepoel. The cattle passed by swimming, as they had before done on the like occasions ; and the following day I also crossed the torrent with the remainder of my company and effects. The preparation, execution, and arrangement of all these matters, employed us till the latter part of the month.

In the interval I procured several birds, and I caused several koedoes to be salted. But I was in great danger of losing my dear Kees. The account of this accident will convey a better idea of my simple and uniform manner of passing my time than any thing else I could say on the subject.

Every thing was got ready for dinner ; and I was dressing upon a plate some dry haricots which I had just fried, when I heard the voice of a bird with which I was not at all acquainted. Forgetting in a moment both my cookery and my dinner, I snatched up my fusée, and hurried from my tent. At the end of half an hour, I returned perfectly satisfied with my expedition, and holding my bird in my hand ; but I was much surpris'd, on entering my tent, not to find a single bean on my table. This was a trick of Kees. I had corrected him

pretty severely, the evening before, for robbing me of my supper ; and I did not imagine that he would have so soon forgot his punishment, as to be guilty of this new fault almost immediately after it. He had however disappeared ; but as he always waited for the return of night, when he had committed any error, before he again made his appearance, I well knew that he could not escape me. It was generally at the time when I was drinking tea that he glided in, without noise, and took his station near me, in his accustomed place, with an air of innocence, as if nothing had happened. That evening he did not appear ; and next morning, as no one had seen him, I began to be very uneasy, and to be apprehensive that he had deserted me entirely. This loss would have been the more distressing, as, besides the amusement he afforded me, he was really of great utility, and rendered me such services that his place could not have been supplied by another. On the third day, however, one of my people, who had been in search of water, assured me that he had seen him in the neighbourhood ; but that he had hid himself as soon as he found that he was discovered. Setting out immediately in quest of

him, I searched all the neighbourhood with my dogs. All of a sudden hearing a cry like that which he used to send forth when I returned from hunting, and when I would not carry him along with me, I stopped; and casting my eyes every where around, I at length perceived him, half concealed, behind a large branch in the middle of a tree. I called him in a familiar manner, and coaxed him as much as I could to descend and come to me; but as he seemed not inclined to trust to these marks of my friendship, and of the joy which I conceived on meeting with him, I was under the necessity of climbing the tree. When I had reached the spot where he was, he suffered me to lay hold of him; while fear and pleasure were alternately painted in his eyes, and expressed by his gestures. Soon after I returned to my camp, where he seemed to wait for his fate; and where I came to a determination respecting him. I thought at first that I ought to tie him up; but by this I should have been deprived of his amusing tricks. I resolved therefore to shew my generosity towards him, and not to treat him with severity. A second correction would not have altered his disposition: and I reflected that he had perhaps more than once received

received it very improperly ; for his reputation, which gave a colour of probability to every accusation made against him, hurt him very much in my opinion, and rendered me unjust, especially when I was in bad humour. Several petty thefts, which a fondness for dainties caused my Hottentots to commit, were often laid upon him ; and on this account poor Kees was many times blamed without cause.

The river Sondag has its source in high mountains, which are almost always covered with snow ; on which account they are named *Snow-Bergen*, or the mountains of snow. I saw them on my left towards the north. This river, enlarged by various small streams which run into it, discharges itself into the sea at the distance of ten leagues from the place where I then was.

On the 1st of October we pursued our route in the usual order. After travelling seven hours, we reposed ourselves for a moment under the ruins of a habitation deserted like the former, and no less dismal and melancholy. At four in the afternoon we halted at a lake ; and it was very fortunate for us that we had two large fires that night, as two lions and some hyænas paid us a visit, which threw
our

our cattle into great disorder. We were obliged to pass the whole night on our legs. These animals appeared so ferocious, that we could not drive them away but by repeated discharges of our fire arms.

At the break of day we saw such numbers of those antelopes called *spring-bock*, that I resolved to employ the whole day in hunting them; especially as our provisions began to fail, and as it was often necessary to have a fresh supply. The consumption made by all my people was so great, that a just idea can scarcely be formed of it; for by carrying a whole horde and their animals along with me, I had added an additional encumbrance, at which I was sometimes frightened. We were, however, lucky enough to kill seven of these antelopes. Though this species are swift-footed, people on horseback may easily come up with them. Being generally collected into flocks, and keeping as closely together as sheep, they mutually impede each other, which greatly retards them in their course: one ball, well directed, may kill two or three of them, and sometimes more.

Next day we made a forced march: we had found bad water the evening before; and to procure

procure better it was necessary that we should fall in with some arm of the river Sondag. We reached it luckily at four in the afternoon. My oxen had suffered so much from the excessive heat, that they were unable to proceed farther; and I was afraid that some of them would die, though I had taken the precaution of relieving them often.

On the 4th we quitted the river entirely; and proceeded that day only three leagues, as the heat was almost insupportable. My oxen had not then quite recovered from the fatigue of the evening before.

On the 5th we set out at three in the morning; and at seven we saw another deserted plantation. The proprietors, without doubt, oppressed by fear, had not taken time to secure their effects from pillage. On the sight of this abode, which was in a perfect state, and which exhibited no marks of fire, it appeared to me that the inhabitants had been terrified without any cause. I had the curiosity to enter the house, and I found that I was not deceived in my opinion; for I observed no derangement in any of the furniture, each utensil being in its proper place. I permitted none of my people to touch any thing, of however
little

little value it might be ; but, as the heat was excessive, I took advantage of the shade which this building afforded us, in order that we might repose ourselves a little. Towards evening I prepared to set out ; and we continued our journey for four hours.

The day following we passed two more deserted houses, which were in the same state as those seen the evening before ; but, as I was unwilling to stop, I did not visit them. After a march of four hours, we arrived at the river *Vogel*, or bird's river, where we halted, as our oxen were in want of water, and had scarcely any thing to eat. At noon the heavens became overcast, and the sun was entirely hid by very large clouds ; which to me was a lucky circumstance, as it gave me an opportunity of advancing a little farther. We hoped to reach *Agter-Bruyntjes-Hoogte* ; but, when we came to the bottom of these mountains, we met with a pond, which obliged us to encamp, as we very much doubted whether we should soon find another.

During the night the savage Hottentots observed our fires ; and, as they approached to reconnoitre us, our dogs, who perceived them, took the alarm, and began to bark and make a
dreadful

dreadful noise. On this occasion part of my people, persuaded that we were invested by Caffres (for I must here repeat that fear made them imagine that they saw Caffres every where), proposed to leave the camp, and to shelter themselves in the bushes; as if we should have been in greater security, when separately concealed in a wretched coppice, than when collected in a body, well armed and resolute. Klaas and I were quite furious. The venerable Swanepoel joined us, with a view of encouraging these dastardly souls; and he swore that he would stand by me whatever might be the event, and that he would spend the last drop of his blood in my defence. In the midst of this conversation, and the timid irresolution of the rest of my company, I heard a voice begging, in broken Dutch, that I would recal my dogs, which I immediately did. When I was fully assured that these people were only Hottentots, I suffered them to approach; upon which they made their appearance, to the number of fifteen men, with several women and children.

They had set out to remove themselves from the flames of war; and I was informed by them that when I passed the mountain I should

should still find several deserted habitations. They told me also that the proprietors of these different houses had collected themselves into one body, to oppose the enemy; but that they had formed a resolution of abandoning their country and possessions entirely, with a view of getting nearer to the Dutch settlements; and that the Caffres, who were still in the field, had sworn not to leave one of them remaining.

I passed the night in conversation of this nature; and I learned from these people every thing that I wished to know: but I was the less inclined to consider the Caffres as ferocious animals thirsting after blood, who spared neither sex, age, nor their neighbours, as I was too well acquainted with the planters to confide in their veracity, or to ascribe to them a part of those horrid cruelties of which they always affected to complain.

But why should a people so mild as the Hottentots, and who lead a life both peaceable and precarious, be concerned in these horrid wars, had they not sufficient cause for shewing their resentment and revenge? The Caffres naturally are not a mischievous people. They live, like the other savages of this
part

part of Africa, on the milk with which they are supplied by their cattle ; and clothe themselves with the skins of animals. Like the rest, they are indolent by nature, and warlike by necessity ; but they are not an odious nation, whose name is calculated to inspire terror. As I was very desirous of being thoroughly informed respecting the motives and rise of these atrocious wars, which thus disturbed the tranquillity of the most beautiful parts of Africa, these honest people, who had trusted to me with so much confidence, unbosomed themselves in the like manner without any reserve. They informed me, indeed, that the oppression and cruelty of the planters were the only cause of the war, and that justice was on the side of the Caffres : they told me also that the Boshomens, a kind of vagabond deserters who belong to no nation, and who live only by rapine, took advantage of that moment of disorder to pillage without distinction the Caffres, the Hottentots, and the planters ; that nothing but the tyrannical behaviour of these wretches could have made the Caffres include in the general proscription all the Hottentots, whom they considered as spies attached to the whites, and whom the latter employed to lay
snares

snare for them with more dexterity. This last circumstance was not void of foundation; but it could by no means be applied to the more remote hordes. Thus were the innocent involved in the common fate of the guilty. But how was it possible for savages to make a distinction which even civilized nations are not accustomed to do? They told me, besides, that the Caffres had procured some fire arms, which they found in those plundered houses, or had taken by surprise from the Hottentots belonging to the colonies.

I was, in short, informed in the most minute manner of every thing that had passed, of the attacks made, and the battles fought, in which, though they had committed horrid ravages, the Caffres had always been beat, which to me did not appear surprising. Their assagay, their most destructive weapon, which they handle with great dexterity, cannot stand in competition with our fire arms, employed by chasseurs who seldom miss their aim. What I had learned interested me very much, for the smallest circumstance could not be indifferent to me. I found myself engaged, on my own account, in the events and chances of this war; since I was actually, as one may say, on
the

the field of battle ; and was approaching towards that moment, when wounded to the soul by the distressing spectacle which I had continually before my eyes, and inflamed with the most ardent desire of serving those unfortunate wretches, with whom I was not acquainted—whom I had never seen, nor was perhaps ever to see ; but whose dismal situation excited my compassion—I was preparing, if all these people would have followed me, to traverse fifty leagues of Caffraria, at the risque of every thing that might happen ; and to re-establish peace for ever in that unhappy country. I was not however seconded in my views by a single person. Heaven itself, in my opinion, could not have freed those who followed me from their terror : but I can more justly cover with opprobrium those dastardly Hottentots of the colonies whom I visited two days after, for the shameful manner in which their chief refused to assist me in an expedition which would have undoubtedly succeeded, and done the greatest honour to humanity.

A fresh misfortune, which had a little before taken place in these unhappy countries, added considerably to my courage, and heated my imagination. I was told that, about six weeks

prior to that period, an English vessel had been shipwrecked on the coast; that being driven on shore, a part of the crew had fallen into the hands of the Caffres, who had put them all to death, except a few women, whom they had cruelly reserved; and that all those who had escaped led a wandering life on the coast, or in the forests, where they must soon perish in misery. Among these unfortunate people, there were said to be several French officers, prisoners of war, who had been put on board in order to return to Europe.

This distressing intelligence gave me great uneasiness; and, after all the information which these people could communicate, I judged that, by proceeding fifty leagues to the eastward of the spot where I was, I should arrive at the vessel. I therefore formed a thousand projects in my mind, and invented a thousand different schemes for assisting these unfortunate people, whose situation was so deplorable: but all my Hottentots revolted against my proposal; and neither prayers nor threats could have any influence over them. The recital of this adventure had made very different impressions on them. A sudden rumour was spread throughout my whole camp; and

and had I not, seconded by two or three of my brave friends, struck a terror into these wretches by my gestures and looks, I should have infallibly fallen a victim to their sedition. One of them I greatly terrified by clapping a pistol to his head; but all my efforts were of no avail. The horde who followed me, without any preamble, told me that they were *free*; that they no longer considered me as their chief; and that they would instantly return, with the fifteen Hottentots who had lately arrived. Even my own people, with a bold air, signified that they were not disposed to be cut to pieces by thousands of Caffres, unanimously declaring, with loud cries, that they would not follow me; and that they would, without delay, set out for the Dutch settlements. I however kept firm to my purpose, and opposed them to the very last; but neither my representations, nor the entreaties of Klaas, produced any effect, except on two of them, who at length consented to expose themselves with me. Old Swanepoel was one of them: but what could four people have done alone? I in vain remonstrated with these savages on the ingratitude with which they repaid my condescension, in suffering them

to attend me, and on their so soon forgetting the care, provisions, and protection, I had afforded them. In vain did I tell them that I considered them all as cowards, traitors, and more detestable enemies than the Caffres: I only redoubled their fear, and inspired them with hatred against myself. I could read in all their countenances that terror had got entire possession of their hearts. On this account I resolved to say nothing farther; and on the approach of night, after having ordered watch to be kept with the utmost attention, I shut myself up in my tent. Being informed at break of day that these strangers were preparing to depart, with their wives, children, cattle, and all their effects, I forbade any one to take leave of them; and, without loss of time, gave orders for having every thing ready, that I also might set out and pursue my journey. In four hours we crossed the mountain Agter-Bruyntjes-Hoogte; and, being refreshed by a shower of rain which came seasonably to our relief, at the end of four hours we encamped, in order to pass the night. As we marched along we observed some more deserted habitations, the proprietors of which were doubtless among the number of the
confe-

confederates. The soil in this place appeared to be, in general, good; the mountains were covered with large beautiful trees; and the plains, interspersed with the *mimosa-nilotica*, abounded with antelopes and gnous: the latter, though excellent eating, are however inferior to the other antelopes.

By the information I had received from the fifteen Hottentots who had incited the horde to revolt, and deprived me of their assistance, I reckoned that I could not be far distant from the place where all these Hottentots of the colonies were assembled. I continually flattered myself with the hopes of finding among them some well-disposed people, who approving of my plan of pacification with the Caffres, and the hopes of assisting the unhappy sufferers who had been shipwrecked, would heartily join me, and second my endeavours to afford them relief. The idea of these miserable people haunted me every where; and I could not help reflecting on the melancholy situation of the poor women, condemned to drag out their existence amidst the torment and horror of despair. These thoughts were ever present to my mind, and attached me more and more to my project; for the desire of restoring them to liberty, and of

bringing them back with me, more and more shut my eyes against any obstacle that might occur; and suffered me to see only the possibility of success: I was therefore impatient to arrive at this horde of Hottentots.

Next morning, after a march of three hours, undertaken at the break of day, I at length discovered the habitation I so much wished for. As soon as these people perceived me, though at a great distance, I saw them all assemble, and form themselves into a group, before the house; while their motions, confusion, and the attention with which they all at the same instant turned their eyes towards me, sufficiently shewed that my appearance considerably alarmed them, and that my convoy, above all, gave them great uneasiness. I however advanced, and, accosting them with politeness, made myself known, and told them my name. I pretended that I was travelling under the protection of the Dutch government, to which I was obliged to give an account of my discoveries. This conclusion of my discourse, which was very concise, seemed to impress them with great awe; they then received me with every demonstration of joy, and testified with how much pleasure they saw me. They confessed

feffed that my beard had frightened them a little (it had then eleven months growth); that they did not know what to think of my arms, my waggon, and my numerous train; that they had often heard mention made of me; and that an hundred circumstances had been related to them, in which I had been in danger of lofing my life; but that they had been at laft affured that I had found a vefsel at anchor in the bay of Blettemberg, which had conveyed me to the ifle of Bourbon; and that on this account, when they faw me arrive, they had at firft imagined that I was another perfon. After a hundred queftions, to which they gave me fcarcely time to return an anfwer, I mentioned the motives that had induced me to pay them a vifit; and the refolution I had taken of penetrating to the extremity of Caffraria. I could not help telling them how much I was furprifed that they had not before attempted to fave the unhappy Europeans, of whose fate they were not ignorant; that I hoped to find amongft them men willing and ready to accompany me to the coaft where their vefsel had been loft; that the Dutch government would, without doubt, reward in a noble manner the authors of fuch a glorious enterprife;

and, to incite them the more, I did not fail to add, that amongst the cargo of the vessel, which was still partly on the coast, each of them might easily procure a thousand comforts for the remainder of their lives. This argument seemed to have some effect upon them for the moment; but I entertained very few hopes; though they eagerly replied that, if things were as I had represented them, it was very proper to go to the assistance of these unfortunate people; who, as they said, were their brothers, and their fellow-creatures.

The most cunning, as being the most timid of the whole company, considering my speech only in that view in which his interest was concerned, added for the rest, that it was more than probable that the Caffres had already plundered the vessel, and carried away the best part of the cargo; that they should find perhaps nothing at all, or, if any thing, not so much as would indemnify them for the risks and expences of such a journey; and that, during their absence, their wives, and their children, would be left exposed to the danger of being massacred by the Caffres.

From this discourse I was fully convinced that nothing could tempt them to undertake
this

this expedition. It appeared that they could not carry away a great number of cattle from their enemies; for, after sharing twenty thousand since the commencement of hostilities, these savages could not have many remaining, as they had been obliged, in order to preserve those which had escaped pillage, to carry them a great way into the interior parts of the country.

I used every argument in my power to overcome the reasoning of this man; and I often told him that he forgot above all the miserable people for whom I had come to solicit assistance: but he had corrupted his companions, and, after that, not one of them shewed the least inclination to second me. As there was no profit in view, I could no longer depend on their assistance.

As it was in vain to attempt any farther to move them, I had recourse to imprecations. I threatened them with all the vengeance of government; I wished that swarms of Caffres might surround their habitations; and, fearing that their example might influence my own people, among whom I found some obedience and attachment, I immediately set out to pursue my journey.

I had

I had remarked that they were reinforced by a pretty numerous company of Meflizo Hottentots, who are courageous and enterprising, and approach nearer to the whites than the Hottentots. As they had always been the first to march against the Caffres, and to signalize themselves in every rencounter, I resolved to leave three of my people behind me, with orders to insinuate themselves among these Hottentots; and to engage some of them to follow me; especially those who were acquainted with the country, and who understood the language of the inhabitants. Before I suffered them to depart, I instructed them in what manner to proceed; and being desirous of approaching the river *Klein-Vis*, I appointed them to meet me at that place. In three hours time I arrived at this river; and, having crossed it, I ordered my caravan to halt, as it was necessary to sleep here, in order to wait for the return of my people, and to hear how they had succeeded in their negotiation. Having observed the prints of some lions feet, I took as many precautions not to be surpris'd by these animals as I had taken against the Caffres. I should not have been very uneasy respecting the latter, had it been possible for
me.

me to find any means of letting them know that I was not among the number of their persecutors; and that I neither belonged to their nation, nor entertained the same sentiments: but they might have fallen suddenly on my camp, and caused great devastation, before we had explained ourselves to each other. This consideration induced me to choose for this time, contrary to my usual custom, an elevated spot for my camp; from which I might have an extensive prospect every where around. When I had fixed upon one, I ordered my tent to be erected; my carriages and oxen to be properly disposed; and a few huts, merely for the purpose of making a shew, to be constructed at the distance of a few paces. I then pitched my military tent within a gunshot of my camp, and covered it with branches of trees, that it might not be perceived; as I intended to pass the night in it, along with my people: by this manœuvre I deceived the enemy; for had they made their appearance, with a view of surprising me in my camp, they would undoubtedly have been disappointed, to their own ruin. I should then have had time to fall upon them, and to surprise them in my turn.

We

We did not pass the night in tranquillity, for our dogs disturbed us so much that we enjoyed no sleep at all.

At the break of day, I perceived at a distance three of my Hottentots advancing towards us, accompanied by three strangers: one of them, named Hans, the son of a Hottentot woman by a white man, had lived almost his whole life among the Caffres, and spoke their language very fluently. By giving him a few glasses of brandy, which I had kept in reserve, I soon gained his confidence; and I made him tell me every thing that I wished to know, respecting the state of affairs at that time. What I learned confirmed me in my opinion, that the Caffres in general are a harmless and peaceful people; but he assured me that, being continually oppressed, plundered, and massacred by the whites, they had found themselves reduced to the necessity of taking up arms in their own defence; adding, that the planters every where gave out, that these people were barbarous and sanguinary, in order to justify their robberies, and the cruelty which they daily exercised against them, and which they endeavoured to make appear as reprisals; that, under pretence of
their

their cattle being carried away, they had, without regard to age or sex, exterminated whole hordes of Caffres, plundered them of their oxen, and ravaged their lands; that this method of procuring live stock appearing to be much easier than to rear them themselves, they had employed it with so much indiscretion for more than a year, that they had shared above twenty thousand among them; and that they had massacred without mercy all those who had attempted to defend them. Hans told me that he had been witness to a transaction, which I shall give here exactly as he related it.

A band of planters having destroyed a Caffre village, a young child about twelve years of age escaped, and concealed itself in a hole, where it was unfortunately discovered by a man belonging to a detachment of planters. This man wishing to make a slave of it, carried it away with him; but the commander taking a fancy to it, insisted upon its being put into his hands. The person who found it obstinately refused to give it up: both sides grew warm; and the commander, inflamed with anger, and running up in a furious manner to the innocent victim, cried out to his adversary, “ If I

“ cannot have the child, it shall not be thine ;
“ upon which discharging his fusée against its
“ breast, it dropped down dead on the spot.”

I learned also, that, in order to amuse themselves, these wretches had often placed their prisoners at a certain distance, and tried who was most expert with their fusées in hitting them. I should never have done were I to relate all the horrid cruelties which they daily commit upon those unhappy savages who are under their protection; but private considerations, and other very powerful motives, oblige me to be silent. Besides, what avails the voice of one feeling individual, against despotism and force? I have said enough to shew the character of the planters of this part of Africa, whom the inactivity of government suffers to go on in their excesses, and is even afraid of punishing. In this place are committed all the cruelties that hell can invent. In a republican state, distinguished more than any other by the simplicity of its manners, and a spirit of philanthropy, the most villanous iniquity remains unpunished; because people do not deign to look beyond those objects which surround them. If the governor receives information sometimes, respecting these horrid abuses,

the distance, the time necessary to convey intelligence to him, and other circumstances, perhaps, which it may be prudent not to inquire into, disguise it so much when it reaches the town, that it scarcely furnishes subject for the conversation of the day.

A planter arrives from the distance of an hundred leagues; he complains to the governor that the Caffres have carried away all his cattle; and he requests a *commando*, that is to say, permission to go and recover his property with the assistance of his neighbours. The governor suspecting no deceit, or pretending not to discover any, takes every thing in the same light as it is represented to him, and sees nothing but justice in the demand of an impostor: a previous enquiry would require too much time, besides being laborious and embarrassing. To grant permission is easy; it costs little, and is only a single word. This fatal word is therefore written, and it becomes the sentence of death passed against thousands of savages, who have neither the same resources nor the same means of defence. The monster who thus deceives the credulity of the governor, returns satisfied amidst the accomplices of his rapacity, and gives to his *commando* whatever extent he
may

may find useful to his interest: a new massacre then takes place, which is only a prelude to more carnage; for if the Caffres have the audacity to recover, by force or by stratagem, the cattle taken from them in consequence of this order, surreptitiously obtained from the governor, and which continues in force till there are no more victims, these planters satiate their vengeance by the most horrid slaughter.

Thus did this war, or rather this pillaging, continue all the time that I resided in Africa. Neither commercial speculations nor a fondness for any service conducted me to the Cape. The natural impulse of my disposition, and a desire of acquiring new knowledge, made me direct my course to that part of the world: I arrived there perfectly free, and with a mind not in the least biassed by prejudice. I made myself better acquainted with the interior parts of the country, and the unknown natives by whom it is inhabited, than with any of the colonies belonging to the Cape, or even the Cape itself, which I did not know, but at the different periods of my return. I had no personal interest in view to make me be suspected of partiality; but I have every where seen
very

very powerful reasons for observing, that the foreseeing eye of policy has been opened too late on those possessions which are at a distance, and which every day become more remote from the metropolis. I have seen that the authority of a governor, however great it may be, does not extend far enough to check at their source those dreadful irregularities, which are continued, and still increasing, in the interior parts of the country. Should it ever happen that the Caffres, incessantly harassed, unite in support of the common cause with the neighbouring nations, who begin also to complain of the planters, their union would certainly occasion the greatest disorder; and who knows what might be the consequence of such a confederation, formed for the purpose of defending inalienable rights, and of avenging ancient injuries? There are many methods by which government might prevent these misfortunes; and it is full time that they should be employed, for the danger increases by delay. There have been instances of the governor, when informed of some cruelties exercised against the savages, summoning in vain the person who was the author of them to come to the Cape, and give an account of his conduct. The

criminal has not so much as deigned to return any answer to the order sent to him ; he has continued to harass and plunder in the same manner as before : and his disobedience has been attended with no bad consequences to him ; nay it has been even soon forgotten.

One day, while discoursing with some of the planters on these abuses, several of them told me that they had more than once received such orders from the governor, without ever paying the least attention to them. Growing a little warm in the cause, I expressed my astonishment that in such circumstances the governor did not send a detachment to enforce obedience to his orders ; and, in case of a refusal, to seize upon the culprit, and to conduct him to town under a strong guard. “ Are you well aware,” said they, “ what would be the result of such an attempt? Assembling all in an instant, we would massacre the half of the soldiers, salt their flesh, and send it back by those we might spare ; with threats of doing the same thing to those who should be bold enough to appear among us afterwards.” Such was their answer ; to which I thought it would be altogether useless to offer any reply. To deal with people

of this character, must be a work of great difficulty; and no small share of address will be necessary to reduce them to obedience. I do not consider it as impossible, that, shaking off the yoke, they may some day dictate laws to the head of the colony; and that day will be when a man of abilities, gaining the minds and confidence of the multitude, shall present to them, under seducing colours, a view of independence and liberty. They are already too sensible of the facility with which such an enterprise may be undertaken; and of the advantages that will result from its success. Nothing will be necessary but to put them in mind that they are about ten thousand in number, all crafty and resolute, and all accustomed to hunting; that every shot they may fire will do execution; that without difficulty, and without danger, they may beat and destroy any forces with which the governor may oppose them; that they will enjoy abundance the moment they cease to acknowledge the irksome and often tyrannical laws of government, which are contrary to every kind of private prosperity; that placed in a delightful climate, the possessors of the finest fields and the most beautiful woods in the country,

abundantly stocked with game of all kinds, they may, by adding to all these advantages those of cultivating the earth, and breeding flocks, procure to themselves, from the first hand, every resource arising from barter; and that, by means of the harbours and roads which are to be found in great plenty on the coasts of their territories, it is in their power to bring the industry of other nations amongst them, to extend their population, to increase their riches, and to have every convenience that an extensive foreign trade can supply. The government at the Cape are already fully sensible of the importance of these reflections; and this perhaps is one of the justest causes of their apparent supineness with respect to the planters. They know the genius and character of these robust people, almost all educated in the midst of the woods; and they were more cautious in their conduct towards them during my residence at the Cape, because they thought the fate of the whole town depended upon their powerful assistance, had the English in the war of 1781 attempted to make a descent there, as they expected. The following anecdote will shew how far they were to be depended on:—An alarm
having

having been spread, though without any foundation, in less than twenty-four hours, from a thousand to twelve hundred of them made their appearance in a body; and these would have been followed by all the rest, had not an order been issued to stop them.

Those however would be in a great error, who from what I have said should imagine that all these planters are so many Cæsars. This is far from being the case; and indeed such an idea would ill agree with the accounts I have before given when speaking of their war with the Caffres, and of their possessions every where abandoned and deserted. Born for the most part among rocks, a savage and rustic education has made them like so many giants with respect to strength; but, though accustomed from their earliest infancy to watch and surprize the monstrous animals of Africa, they are absolutely not fit but for a first attack, or to succeed in an ambuscade. They would not stand in the open field, nor would they ever return to a second charge. They are not acquainted with that courage which is inspired by a sense of honour, but with that only which arises from a consciousness of one's

strength or dexterity ; and if the reader calls to mind my adventure with them in the Bay of Saldanha, it may be easily seen that it tends strongly to corroborate what I have here advanced. The same thing cannot be said of the greater part of the women. Courageous with reflection, their deliberate coolness knows neither obstacles nor fear ; being equally skilful as their husbands in managing their horses, and in the use of fire arms, they are much more indefatigable, and never retreat on the appearance of danger : they are real Amazons.

I was acquainted with a widow who managed her own plantation ; and when the wild beasts came to alarm her flocks, she mounted her horse, followed them in close pursuit, and never left them till she had either destroyed them, or obliged them to quit her possessions.

In one of my excursions two years after to the great Nimiqua Land, I saw upon a very solitary plantation a young girl of twenty, who always accompanied her father on horseback, when he took the field, at the head of his people, to repel the Boshmen who came to disturb his repose. In defiance of their
poisoned

poisoned arrows, she would pursue them with fury, overtake them in their course, and fire upon them without mercy.

The annals of the Cape make mention of a great number of women who have distinguished themselves by acts of intrepidity that might do honour to the most resolute of the other sex.

The tragical fate of a widow, who lived upon a very remote plantation with her two sons, the oldest of whom was not above eighteen years of age, still afforded a subject for conversation at the Cape, when I arrived there. One obscure night she and all her family being awakened by the kicking and bellowing of her oxen and cows, which were in an enclosure not far distant, every body flew to arms, and hastened towards the place from which the noise proceeded. When they reached the spot, they found a lion, which, having got over the pales, was making dreadful devastation among the cattle; and no resource was left but to enter the enclosure, to invest the ferocious animal, and to kill him. None of the slaves or Hottentots of this woman had however sufficient courage to try this expedient; and even her two sons would not venture to present themselves before the ferocious beast. In this di-

lemma the intrepid widow entered alone, armed with a fufee; and penetrating to the lion, which on account of the darknefs was fearcely perceptible, ſhe diſcharged her piece: but unluckily the animal being only wounded, darted upon her with the utmoſt fury, and threw her down. On hearing the cries of their poor mother, the two children haſtened to her relief; and having become deſperate at this horrid fight, while the formidable lion was engaged with his prey, they fell upon him, and ſtrangled him, though too late, on the mangled corpe of their mother. Beſides ſeveral deep wounds which ſhe had received in her throat, and ſeveral parts of her body, the lion had torn off one of her hands above the wrift, and devoured it. Every poſſible aſſiſtance was immediately given her; but ſhe expired that evening in great agony, amidſt the unavailing lamentations of her children and ſlaves aſſembled around her.

I have already ſaid that Hans gave me every information that I required reſpecting Caffraria. He told me that the territories in which I then was belonged to a powerful prince, who reſided at the diſtance of thirty leagues from us, more towards the north, and that he was named
king

king *Faroo*. He advised me to penetrate as far as the place of his abode; assuring me that I had nothing to fear, and no danger to run: on the contrary, he told me that both the prince and his subjects would receive me with great pleasure; in hopes that, on my return to the Cape, a relation of what I had seen of their manners, their character, and their way of life, would efface those unfavourable ideas every where formed of them, from the accounts of the planters, whom they detested; and that perhaps they would then be suffered to enjoy tranquillity, the only favour which they requested from the white people.

On the first view, this reasoning was plausible and seducing; and I was fully sensible of all the advantages that might arise to me from the execution of such a project. I suffered myself, indeed, to be almost persuaded; but, on the other hand, if through imprudence, or excess of confidence, I should lose the fruits of all my travels, or if I should happen to be massacred, this step would be considered as a masterpiece of folly and extravagance. I well knew the fickle and unsteady disposition of the offspring of the whites and the Hottentots; and I reflected, for the first time, on what this
man

man might be capable of doing. The bribe of a glass of brandy might make him a traitor: he was a friend to the Caffres; had passed part of his time amongst them; and, besides this, he had come from a retreat which I had every reason to suspect, and was there perhaps only to watch the motions of the planters, and to betray them. Might it not be possible that his intention was to sacrifice me, that he might share my effects with the Caffres; and to acquire some merit among them, by leading me into a snare?

Having weighed these considerations for a long time, agitated by a thousand contrary ideas, and incapable of forming any resolution myself, I suddenly fixed upon an easier and much more prudent plan. By these means I gained a little more time to indulge in new reflections, and to acquire better information, without exposing either my person or my fortune. I resolved to send a deputation to king *Faroo*; and, on the first overture made to Hans, he accepted this commission without the least hesitation. Though his conduct upon this occasion seemed to presage well, I was however determined to take every precaution. This young mestizo promised to engage two

or

or three of his friends to undertake the journey along with him; and to these I added two of my most faithful Hottentots, Adams and Slinger, who were to give an account to the king of every thing I had done for eleven months before, from the time that I quitted the Cape. In order that he might be enabled to judge that curiosity alone had conducted me to his territories, I charged my messengers to tell him that, being born in another world, and above all a stranger in Africa, I was in no manner either a friend to the planters who were carrying on war against him, or an accomplice in their designs; that I did not even live amongst them; that I highly disapproved of their conduct; and, in a word, that he might rest assured that, as long as I remained in his country, he would have no occasion to be uneasy at my conduct or motions, as they tended to one harmless end, that of procuring such objects as related to my taste and studies; and that, far from carrying ravage and terror into his possessions, I would on the contrary embrace every opportunity of being useful to his subjects and to himself, as I had been to several Hottentot hordes, who neither suspected my sincerity,
nor

nor refused my assistance: I added, that the government at the Cape, to whom I would give a faithful account of every thing I had seen, would lose no time to restore tranquillity in his territories, and to re-establish that harmony which had subsisted between him and the planters. Having instructed my deputies in this manner, particularly those belonging to my camp, to whom I enjoined the greatest secrecy respecting certain particulars which I entrusted to them alone (such, for example, as the express orders of bringing some Caffres along with them, that I might be able to judge what degree of confidence they reposed in me, and to see how far I ought to grant them mine), I gave them a few presents for the prince, and dismissed them. Having promised to return soon to Koks-Kraal, where I was to wait for them, each of them made such provision as he thought necessary, and then they departed.

I myself set out in the morning; and, after a march of three hours, we found ourselves on the banks of the Groot-Vis-Rivier, where the heat was excessive. Though the earth, covered all over with large round pebbles, rendered the way exceedingly laborious for the oxen,
we

we proceeded along the banks of the river; but, overcome by fatigue, we were forced to halt, at the distance of three hundred paces from its current: it was then only four in the afternoon. Whilst we were making the usual preparations to enable us to pass the night in tranquillity, I walked towards the banks of the river; not far from which I perceived the remains of a kraal belonging to the Caffres. Curiosity having induced me to go up to it, I found several huts perfectly entire, and others wholly destroyed: but I beheld a more dismal spectacle in some human bones which lay scattered here and there. From their apparent age, I concluded that they were the relics of those unfortunate wretches whom the planters had made the first victims of their revenge; and that they had been left there since the commencement of this unjust war.

We passed the night of the 10th without any interruption. Some hyænas, indeed, paid us a visit; but being accustomed to such guests, we were under very little uneasiness. In the morning, my Hottentots, on their return from procuring water, informed me that they had seen several fresh traces of koedoes* and hip-

* The *antelope oryx* of Pallas. T.

popotami. As our stock of provifion was nearly exhausted, and the weather favourable, I refolved to fpend this day in hunting.

My people having difperfed themfelves on the banks of the river, in order that they might difcover the precise fpot which thefe hippopotami haunted, I myfelf went to the other fide, in hopes of finding fome koedoes or other game. I however faw only fome ftragglng antelopes, and a few flocks of oſtriches. Being on foot, and finding that I could by no means approach them, I began to fear that the whole day would be fpent in contemplation and courfing; but, after having traversed a great deal of ground, I fuddenly obferved, in a plain which was covered with long grafs and a few ſhrubs, feven koedoes, which very luckily did not perceive me. Followed by a man who attended me, I approached with great precaution; and, when we were within two hundred paces of them, I ordered him to fire firſt; for, as I was certain that I could overtake thefe animals by running, I wifhed to reſerve my ſhot till the moſt dubious moment. As ſoon as he had fired, they all betook themſelves to flight, as I expected; but very luckily as they paſſed me, at the diſtance of about
thirty

thirty paces, I killed the only male which was in the flock. My Hottentot maintained that this was the animal he had fired at; but I convinced him of his mistake, for we found only one wound and one ball in it. Having covered it with a few branches, and tied my handkerchief to the end of a pole, which I fixed in the ground, to frighten away ferocious animals, we set out in pursuit of the rest of the koedoes; because, the male being killed, I was certain that the females would not go far. We observed some traces of blood, which plainly shewed that one of them had been wounded: and indeed, at the distance of four hundred paces, we found one just expiring. My Hottentot, whom I had reproached for shooting badly, was highly flattered by this event; but he had taken aim at the male, and it was by chance that he hit the female. Having skinned it, and taken out its bowels, we thought we might then both of us be able, as the distance was not very great, to convey it to the spot where we had left the male. Being considerably fatigued by this labour, and our appetite beginning to be whetted, we kindled a few sticks, and broiled the liver. I do not know whether it was owing to our hunger,

or

or to the delicacy of the food, but I remember that, though we had neither salt nor bread *, I could scarcely be satisfied with it; and that this was one of the most delicious repasts I ever made in my life: after this we tied the four feet of the animal together, and with a pole carried it upon our shoulders to the other which we had killed. I then dispatched my Hottentot to bring me two horses, with a few of his companions, and we soon conveyed the game to our camp. Some instantly filled the kettles with it, while others broiled steaks of it upon the hot coals; and, in less than two hours, two thirds of the flesh disappeared.

The Hottentots are gluttonous as long as there is abundance of provisions; but, in times of scarcity, they can be contented with a very little. In this respect I may compare them to hyænas, or other carnivorous animals, which devour all their prey in an instant, without thinking on the future; and which indeed remain several days without finding any nourishment, and are sometimes obliged to appease their hunger with clay. A Hottentot is capable of eating in one day ten or twelve

* The latter I had not eat for some time.

bandage, in order to diminish their hunger, which they endure for a long time, and appease with very little. This curious method of employing ligatures is also among them a general remedy, which they use for all diseases. They bind a close bandage round the head, or any other part affected, and think that in confining the distemper they drive it away. I have been more than once present at such operations; and, after they were finished according to the patients wish, I have seen them become quite composed, and reply with more readiness when I enquired tenderly how they did, and assure me that they found great relief. However whimsical this custom may appear, it would not be so generally adopted by these people, did it not answer the high idea which they entertain of it.

Those Hottentots whom I had sent to search for hippopotami soon returned, and informed me, that in coasting along the river they observed one in a place so covered with reeds, that they found it impossible to reach the water in order to examine it more closely, but that every time he approached the surface to breathe they had heard him distinctly; that they had in vain fired several times to frighten him,

him, and make him change his position; and that in all probability next morning he would choose some other spot more favourable to our designs. They had fallen in with about twenty buffaloes also, but they did not kill one.

The night following, being the 11th of the month, we were visited by some lions, hyænas, and jackals, which kept us continually on the watch till two o'clock in the morning. The smell of our steaks and fresh provisions had undoubtedly attracted them. We found it very difficult to keep our horses quiet, and especially the one I had bought from Mr. Mulder in the country of Auteniqua. On hearing the cries of these ferocious beasts, this young animal was so terrified, that we were under the necessity of putting shackles on his four legs, and double reins to his head, to prevent him from destroying himself: the appearance of day restored us however to our former tranquillity.

The evening before I had sent a Hottentot to reconnoitre Koks-Kraal, which was the rendezvous where I agreed to wait for my deputies. They had been gone only three days; and as I could not expect to see them so soon,

I thought that this retreat might enable me to follow a new plan of life; and it was here that I intended for a little while to establish my petty empire, if disagreeable news, or some misfortune, did not oblige my messengers to return. I had however no time to lose; and precaution, always more indispensable, and which I made a most severe law, sufficiently engaged me to be expeditious. On the report of my commissioners, I judged that we might encamp very conveniently in Koks-Kraal; and the first view of this charming spot did not deceive my expectation. Having reached it in three hours, we found an enclosure about fifty feet square, formed by a dry hedge of branches of trees and thorns; it was destroyed in some places, but it required scarcely a day to repair it. For sheltering our cattle the discovery of this enclosure was so much the luckier, as it commanded a view of almost the whole neighbourhood; on one side we observed the river, from which we were distant not more than three or four hundred paces. Wild beasts, however, were not the principal objects of my uneasiness; I thought more of securing them from the Caffres dispersed over the country. I considered that,

not

not knowing the pacific measures which I was pursuing with one of their kings, and not being acquainted with my manner of thinking respecting them, they might every moment come to attack my camp; and the person whom I chiefly dreaded, was he to whom I had entrusted the conditions of my embassy. Having seen with his own eyes what number of people remained with me, and my strength as well as my weakness, and knowing from my own information my plan and the place where we were to meet, it was in his power either to corrupt such of my people as accompanied him, or to betray and assassinate them by the way. What was there at that time to prevent him from coming unexpectedly at the head of a numerous party, and falling upon me, and, by one of those strokes too common in war, effacing my name from the number of the living? I must openly confess, that with the well-formed design of selling my life at a dear rate, my terror increased in proportion to the precautions which I every day took in respect to my safety; but, as the time after the departure of my envoys increased, my thoughts became a little calmer: long absence lessened the dan-

ger, and these dismal ideas at length became familiar to me.

Having ordered my large tent to be erected without the enclosure, and at one of its extremities, I caused it to be surrounded by a few false huts to deceive the enemy, as we had attempted at Klyn-Vis-Rivier. At the end of the enclosure, opposite my tent, and in one of its angles, we formed a separate place for my horses, with another for my sheep and goats. Near these I erected my small tent, in which I proposed to sleep; and we raised the hedge of the enclosure so much with prickly trees, that it was impossible for any ferocious animal to leap over it: by these means my flocks were perfectly safe in a space forty feet square, which was sufficiently wide and commodious. This kind of a fortification might, in case of necessity, have even served both me and my people as a place of retreat, where we could have braved two thousand Caffres.

These arrangements satisfied all my companions, still more uneasy than their chief, and I saw them gradually resume their former gaiety. We did not however neglect the usual precautions on the approach of night:

at

at the distance of fifty paces from each side of the enclosure we kindled large fires, to drive away the lions and the hyænas, and, for the greater security, we lighted others around us. This disposition was attended with the completest success. I pursued my ordinary occupations, and thought of nothing else but hunting. Having observed the first afternoon some peroquets flying through the air in order to go and drink at the river, I watched them, and was lucky enough to kill one of them. It was a new species, which has never yet been described: its size approaches that of the ash-coloured peroquet of Guinea; its general colour is a green of different shades, but the legs and the tip of the wings are of a beautiful orange. I shall give an ample account of it in my description of birds. We were visited also during the day-time by considerable troops of *barwians*, or apes of the same species as my friend *Kees*. These animals, astonished at seeing so many people, were still more so to observe one of their own kind remaining very peaceably amongst us, and to hear him answer them in good language. One day they came down from a little hill which stood near my camp; and in less than half an hour

above an hundred of them, prompted by curiosity, surrounded us, continually repeating *gou-a-cou, gou-a-cou*, for the voice of Kees had greatly emboldened them. There were many among them much larger than the rest, but they were all of the same species: they performed a thousand tricks and gesticulations, which I should in vain attempt to describe. Those would be much deceived who should judge of them from those degenerated apes, which pine in a state of slavery, languor, and fear, in Europe, or which are stifled by the caresses of our ladies, or poisoned by their dainties. The thick atmosphere of our climates damps their natural liveliness, and destroys them, nor can they be made to laugh but by the force of blows.

A singularity however, which I have already had occasion to remark, engaged my attention. Kees, which I held by the paw, though he knew these animals to be of the same species, and replied to them, would never go near them. I dragged him towards them, but, contented with being on their guard, they shewed no signs of fear, and saw me approach with as much tranquillity as Kees shewed agitation in resisting. All of a sudden he made his escape
from

from me, and ran to hide himself in my tent. The cause of this terror was perhaps owing to his being afraid that they would carry him along with them. He was very strongly attached to me, and I wish to do him honour for this sentiment. In the mean time the rest of the apes continued their gesticulations, and seemed to force themselves to exhibit tricks and emit cries in order to amuse me, till fatigued by their noise, and tired of this spectacle, I wished to procure myself another. On discharging a fusee, all my dogs were soon at their heels; and it was very amusing to see in how light a manner and with what nimbleness they fled; they instantly dispersed themselves, and, leaping from rock to rock, disappeared with the velocity of lightning.

On the 13th I was awakened very early in the morning by the cry of a bird which I did not know. Its tones, which were full and well supported, had no resemblance to any thing I had ever before heard. As they appeared to be really extraordinary, I instantly started up, and got close to the bird without being perceived; yet as it was scarcely day, I saw it but very indistinctly through the bushy branches of a tree upon which it was perched,

7

and

and I was so unfortunate as to suffer it to escape. By its flight, however, I could distinguish that it was a goat-fucker * ; I indeed was not deceived, for some days after I had an opportunity of killing several of them.

This bird is very different from the goat-fucker known in Europe, and which has only one plaintive cry like that of the common toad, which probably has given rise to its French name † ; but that of Africa is very distinct, and such as cannot possibly be imitated. It continues singing for whole hours after sunset, sometimes during the whole night ; and this difference, added to that of its feathers, makes it a new species.

I killed also several very pretty birds ; and among others a barbet ‡, of a very small unknown species, and a cuckoo which I named the bawler §, because its shrill cry may indeed be heard at a great distance : this cry, or, to express myself more correctly, this song, has no resemblance to that of our cuckoo in Europe,

* The goat sucking owl ; called also in some parts of England the churn owl, or fern owl. T.

† *Crapaud volant*, or the flying toad. T.

‡ *Bucco capensis* Linn. T.

§ In French *Criard*.

and its plumage also is entirely different. In this canton I found likewise a great many of the golden cuckoos described by Buffon under the name of the *green-golden cuckoo* of the Cape. This bird is undoubtedly the most beautiful of its species, for its plumage is enriched with white, green, and gold. Perched on the tops of large trees, it continually repeats, and with a varied modulation, these syllables, *di, di, didric*, as distinctly as I have written them; for this reason I have named it the *didric*. As I was thus amusing myself in pursuing some small birds, I perceived a flock of vultures and crows, which were making a great noise, and soaring round and round in the air. When I reached the spot almost below them, I saw the remains of a buffalo, which had been devoured by lions perhaps not twenty-four hours before. On the first view of the field of battle, I concluded that the conflict must have been terrible; all the ground around seemed to have been beat and trod upon; I could count how many times the buffalo had been thrown down, and I found tufts of the lion's mane scattered here and there, which the former had without doubt torn away either with his feet or his horns.

Having

Having observed near this spot, which was not far distant from the river, the fresh traces of two hippopotami, I followed these marks, and easily discovered the place where the animals had again entered the water. I listened very attentively, but I heard nothing; and the banks of the river were so encumbered with reeds and shrubs, that I could not get near them. These animals therefore had every advantage to enable them to conceal themselves, and to avoid rising up from the water to breathe. It would have been losing time to wait for them; the hour of dinner was approaching, and I was both tired and hungry. As I had advanced too far in pursuit of my goat-sucker and other birds, I set out to return to my camp by the shortest way; and while I was going towards the east, and directing my route by the sun, the report of a fusée, fired almost at my ear, made me start, and filled me with the greater fear, as it was unexpected. Knowing that it could be fired only by some of my people, I ran towards the place whence the sound seemed to proceed, and found one of my worst marksmen wasting my powder in vain. He told me that he had been watching an hippopotamus from the break of day, that he had
fired

fired at him, and that he had not the least doubt of his being killed. A very unskilful hand may sometimes do execution by chance; and though it was necessary to wait more than a quarter of an hour before we could see the animal rise up from the water, I resolved to watch him myself, and to send my Hottentot in quest of more people; giving him orders at the same time to bring me some refreshment. At the end of an hour and an half, which I passed very impatiently, my people arrived, but the hippopotamus had not appeared. The hunter however assured me, that after he had fired he had seen him plunge into the water, and had observed also a violent ebullition and several spots of blood on the surface. He added, that the current being very strong, the animal might perhaps have been carried away by it, which I thought very probable; on this account he set out in hopes of finding it lower down, while I returned to my camp to dissect the birds which I had killed.

About three in the afternoon we were attacked by a dreadful storm; and the forest which bordered the mountain was several times struck with lightning. One of my people returned with an antelope he had killed;

ed; and he who had fired at the river horse came back very late without having seen any thing. This disappointment afforded his companions a subject for ridiculing him. He became the object of the sarcasms of all my wits; every one put in his word; and they wished to persuade him that the animal at which he fired had been only a guana*. These pleasantries being insensibly converted into abuse, I observed that their ridicule was about to be terminated by a combat with fists; but by one word I put an end to their warmth, and made the orators be silent.

On the 14th the rain fell so abundantly during the whole night, that it extinguished our fires, nor was it possible for us to kindle them again. Our dogs made a dreadful noise, which kept us all awake, but we saw no ferocious animals. I observed that in these rainy nights the lion, the tyger, and the hyæna, are entirely silent, and it is then that the greatest danger is to be apprehended; for as these animals never cease on such occasions to range through the fields, they fall upon their prey without giving warning, and without allowing

* The guana is a kind of large lizard, very common in the rivers of Africa.

people time to be upon their guard. What still adds to the dread which this disagreeable circumstance occasions is, that the moisture deprives the dogs of their sense of smelling, and on this account they are of no use. My people were too well aware of this danger; for when the rain had put out our fires, it was with great difficulty they could be prevailed on to re-light them, so much were they afraid of being surpris'd.

It must indeed be allowed, that stormy nights in the desarts of Africa exhibit a picture of desolation, and people find themselves involuntarily struck with terror. When they are surpris'd by these deluges, they soon penetrate a tent, and inundate all the mats; continued flashes of lightning in their rapid passage exhibit a momentary blaze amidst the most profound obscurity; the loud claps of thunder, which burst forth on all sides with an awful noise, seem to clash together, and are multiplied by being re-echoed from mountain to mountain; the cries of domestic animals, and a few intervals of dreadful silence, all conspire to render the scene more dismal, while the danger of being attacked by ferocious beasts still adds to the common terror: no-
I thing

thing but the appearance of day can lessen the dread, and restore tranquillity to nature.

The following morning was still gloomy: the atmosphere was loaded with clouds, and the rain redoubled at intervals. Being therefore little disposed to go abroad, I employed myself in reviewing my collection of birds, which I had recently preserved. As I had a sufficient quantity to fill a box, I arranged them in one with much care, and daubed it over with pitch as usual, to prevent insects from getting into it. The number of those which I then possessed, added to those I had before sent from the country of Auteniqua, already exceeded seven hundred.

About four in the afternoon the sky became serene, and very seasonably revived our drooping spirits. We resumed therefore our usual occupations, and I amused myself with making my people fire at a mark, which afforded them much entertainment. From time to time I took care to grant them this indulgence, as it exercised them; and I remarked, from the commencement of my journey, that their courage increased in proportion to their dexterity: but they considered as a great favour what I permitted only with
a political

a political view of procuring more safety to my caravan. The ordinary prize was a ration of tobacco; a bottle suspended from a rock was the mark, and the conditions were to break it at the distance of two hundred and fifty paces. One named Pit gained the prize that day at the fifty-fourth shot; and he very generously shared it with all the rest who had contended. The balls were not all lost; they were almost all found at the bottom of the rock, but it was necessary to have them all cast again.

As the setting of the sun seemed to announce fine weather the next morning, I formed a design of hunting hippopotami in proper form. I sent several men to try what discoveries they could make on the banks of the river: we cleaned all our fire-arms, and we cast several balls of a large size, into which I put, according to the African custom, an eighth part of tin. By these means balls are capable of making a greater resistance, and they penetrate better, because they do not become flat when they meet with bones. Their effect would be more certain were it possible to employ pure tin only; but being then much lighter, they would not fly so far, nor hit so

exactly. After our fires were kindled for the night, which was not easily done, as the earth was moist, and our wood exceedingly wet, I regaled my people with tea, and I am certain that upon one ounce they poured at least fifty pints of boiling water.

This evening was one of the most amusing I had ever spent. I had still the same jokes and the same merry tales from these good people, who, all seated around a large fire, endeavoured to divert their master, and, desirous to engage his attention and give him proofs of their attachment and sincerity, made him easily forget what master-piece was crowned that day in such or such an academy. My Lyceum was undoubtedly as good as any other of the same kind. The prowess to be shewn next morning in hunting the hippopotamus was above all brought upon the carpet: every body hoped to be of the party; and I found great difficulty in arranging it so as to please all. I was desirous that some of these sportsmen should disperse themselves throughout the country, to shoot antelopes, on which I depended more for provisions than on hippopotami, as the banks of the river were so covered with reeds and large trees, that

that it always appeared to me more and more difficult to discover them, and to get near them. As night was in the mean time advancing, and as I did not see those hunters arrive whom I had sent out to make discoveries, I ordered my largest piece to be fired three times; yet it was nearly half an hour before they returned any answer. At length, however, we heard, four or five minutes after each other, three reports, which made us conclude that they had perhaps fallen in with some of these animals. A quarter of an hour after, we heard three reports more; but the sound did not seem to proceed from so great a distance as the former: at length the firing continued at certain intervals, and seemed more and more to approach us; which induced us to believe that these unfortunate people were pursued by some ferocious animals. On this account, I ran immediately to meet them; and, when I found them, they appeared to be trembling and in great terror. They had, however, seen nothing; but, by the restlessness of the two dogs which they had carried with them, it was too clear that their lives had been in danger from lions, and that they had narrowly escaped. The dogs indeed had not

deceived them. I learned from them also, that they had heard the snorting of some hippopotami above the place in which they had hid themselves: this account renewed my hopes; but, as we had great need of repose, I retired to my tent. Scarcely had I fallen asleep, when, at about half an hour after eleven, I was suddenly alarmed by the roaring of a lion, which was heard by another, that seemed at first to answer from a very great distance; but in a quarter of an hour the latter joined him, and both of them began to prowl around our camp. We marched about, however, with so much boldness and speed, and we fired so often, that we intimidated them by the noise, and obliged them to depart. We were now under no doubt that they were the same which had followed our hunters. On this occasion they were indebted for their safety to the dogs, which they had carried along with them: being informed by them of the danger which threatened them, the signals of distress directed to us had been sufficient to keep the enemy at a distance.

It is hardly possible to conceive how much the boldest dogs tremble on the approach of a lion. Nothing is so easy as to discover, by
their

their looks, during the night, what kind of ferocious animals are in the neighbourhood. If it be a lion, the dog, without stirring from the spot, begins to howl in a most melancholy tone; he seems very uneasy and restless; he approaches his master, keeps close to him, and fawns upon him as if he meant to say, *You must defend me.* Other domestic animals are under no less agitation; all of them start up; not one of them remains in a lying posture; and the oxen bellow in a plaintive manner, but with a low voice. Horses beat the earth, and caper about in all directions; goats express their fear also by peculiar signs; and sheep, with their heads hung down, collect themselves into a body, and press as closely against one another as they can. They appear then as one mass, and continue in that position without the least motion. Man alone, haughty and confident of his own superiority, snatches up his arms, palpitates with impatience, and pants after his victim.

On such occasions the terror of Kees was still more apparent. As much frightened by the reports of our fuses which we fired on the approach of the lion, the least movement would make him start; he moaned like a sick

person, and dragged himself along at my side in a most languid condition. My cock seemed only astonished at the convulsive agitation of my camp, while a common hawk would have thrown him into the greatest consternation. He dreaded the smell of a weasel more than all the lions of Africa united. Thus each being has some enemy which it defies, and the latter in its turn bends before a stronger. Man, however, braves all, except those of his own species.

We indeed see animals of the same kind fight with one another; but they are impelled to this, merely for a moment, by love, the only passion that disunites them, after which every thing again returns to its former order. A more continued and durable hatred may however be observed among domestic animals. Is this the effect of education or of example?

But I return to the different signs by which danger is announced; and it may be readily believed that no one has had a better opportunity of observing them in the minutest manner. All the books and compilations, and all the speculative eloquence in the world, can never overturn observations so often repeated on the grand theatre of the African deserts.

If it be an hyæna that is prowling in the neighbourhood, the boldest of the dogs pursues him to a certain distance, and seems not to be much afraid of him; and an ox continues lying without manifesting terror, unless it be a young one, which for the first time hears this dangerous animal. The case is the same with the horse, which, with his foot tied to his halter, remains all night in the meadows, and shews no kind of fear.

If it be jackals (a kind of foxes) that are ranging around, the dogs pursue them briskly as far as possible; unless, happily for the latter, there be lions or hyænas in the neighbourhood; for as soon as they perceive them, fear obliges them to return, and brings them soon back to their retreat.

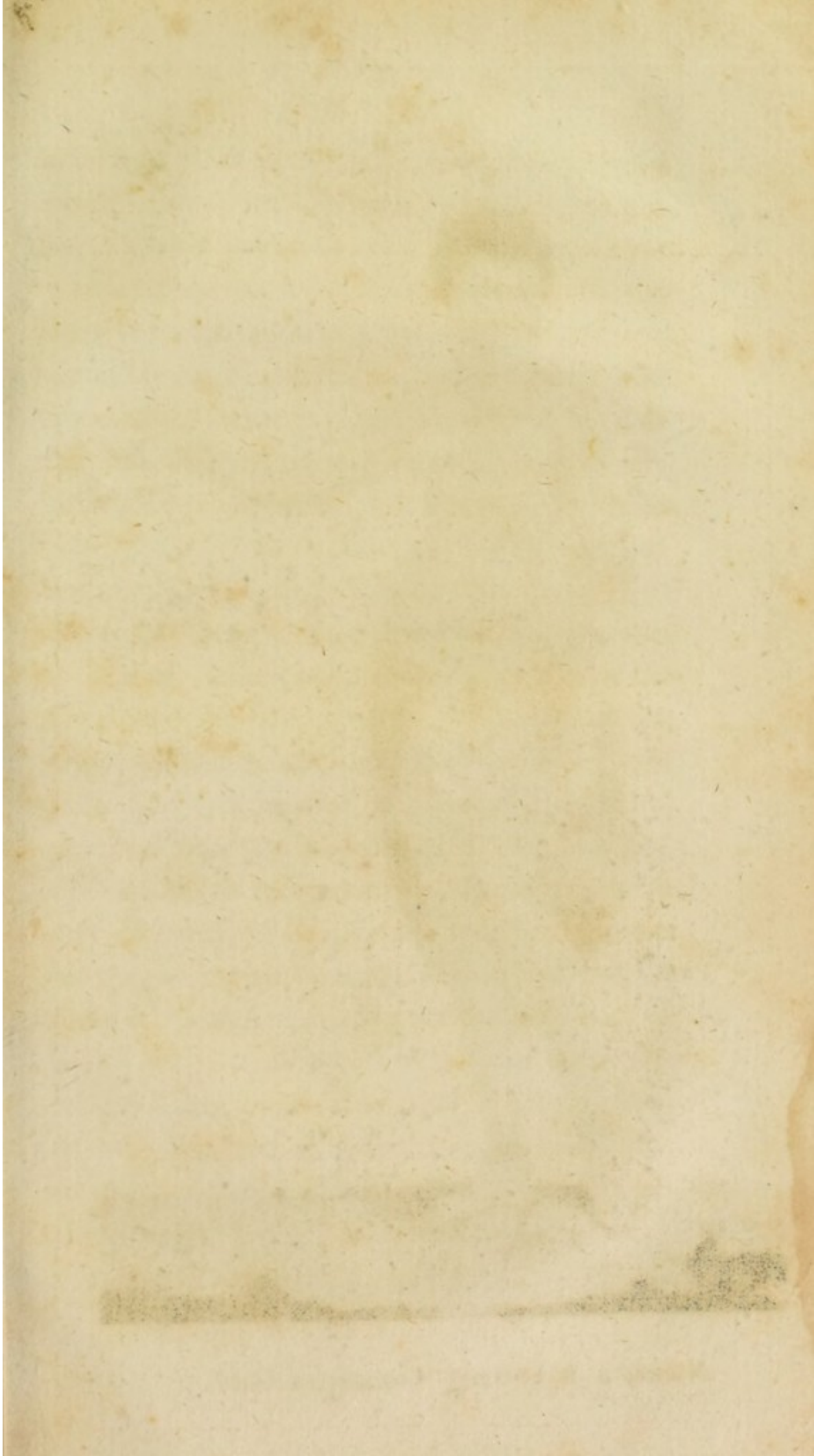
The Hottentots pretend that the jackal is a spy to other ferocious animals, and that it comes to provoke and detain the dogs, in order that the lion or the hyæna, seizing that opportunity, may more easily lay hold of their prey, which, as an acknowledgment for the service received, they share amicably with them.

What I have seen confirms pretty strongly this assertion, which, perhaps, may be a little

exaggerated. However this may be, it is certain that the moment the jackals begin their concerts, the hyænas never fail to arrive speedily; but they do not shew themselves openly, till they see the dogs fully engaged. We always kept two of them coupled together, to bark in the absence of the rest, in order to prevent the hyænas, which are less afraid of fire than the lion, from approaching too near us.

Next morning, the 15th, day-light had scarcely appeared, when we were on foot. After breakfast, I dispatched three hunters to the woods and the plain, with orders to search for buffaloes, antelopes, gnous, and koedoes; whilst I took with me four of the best shooters, and three men to carry my large carabine, ammunition, and a few pieces of dried flesh, in case we should be obliged to pass the whole day in the field; and, leaving old Swanepoel, with the rest of my people, to guard the camp, we departed.

In going along the side of the river, we kept as near the banks as we could, observing the greatest silence. In this manner we marched three hours without discovering any thing; but perceiving at length the tract of
an





Heath sc

Narina, a Young Gonaqua Girl.

an hippopotamus which must have passed that way in the night, we followed it for an hour and a half, and it conducted us to the place where the animal had thrown itself into the water; upon which we distributed ourselves along the banks, at a certain distance one from the other, to listen. The person who was at the greatest distance having discharged his fusée, we ran towards him, and found that he had fired at the animal, but missed it. Very luckily we did not wait long before we saw it appear again, and heard it breathe, but it had reached the opposite shore. Though the river was very broad, two of my people swam over, in hopes of forcing it to keep at least in the middle, if they could not bring it within reach of us. This attempt perfectly succeeded; but the animal was so timid, that when it breathed it scarcely raised its nostrils above the surface of the water. As it changed its place every moment, it never shewed itself in the spot where we were waiting for it, and it plunged so often and so quickly, that it gave us no time to take aim. We had already fired thirty times without touching it. The two Hottentots who crossed the river had no fuses;

and the cunning animal remarking that they did not fire, kept continually on that side. I therefore dispatched Pit, who had won the prize in shooting at a mark, ordering him to cross the river out of the animal's sight, to join his companions by going a little way about, and, above all, not to fire till he was sure of his aim: all which he executed with much intelligence. The animal, which on the other side thought itself out of our reach, having no suspicion, raised its whole head sometimes out of the water, and at one of these moments, Pit directed his shot so well, that the hippopotamus received it, and immediately dived. It was severely wounded, I am certain, for it appeared soon after with the greater part of its body above the surface, and agitated with convulsive motions. Embracing this opportunity, I fired, and lodged my ball in its breast, upon which it again plunged, and did not appear till the expiration of twenty-seven minutes. Being then dead, it floated along with the current, and some of my people having swum to it, pushed it towards us close to the bank.

I can scarcely describe the joy which we all felt when we at length saw this monstrous
animal

animal in our possession; but I and my people were actuated by very different motives. Gluttony presented it to their eyes as a delicious morsel, on which they were about to feed; whilst curiosity exhibited it to my mind as an interesting object of natural history, which I did not know but from books and engravings.

The legs of this animal being very short in proportion to its bulk, favoured us so much, that we were able to roll it to land, as we would have rolled a German bully. The animal was also round; and I could not be satisfied with admiring and examining this enormous mass, which was a female, with the minutest attention. Pit's ball had struck exactly above the left eye, and was found lodged in its jaw; but I much doubted whether that had occasioned its death. Mine, on the contrary, entering precisely near the omoplate, had broken one of its ribs, and passed through its lungs from one side to another.

From the muzzle to the root of the tail, it was ten feet seven inches in length, and eight feet eleven inches in circumference. Its tusks, which were crooked, were only five inches in length, and an inch in diameter in the thickest part,

part, which induced me to believe that it was a young one. I found no foetus in it; and its stomach contained nothing but some leaves and a few chewed reeds. I even observed pieces of branches of the size of a goose quill, which were only flatted. In the stomach or excrements, it is generally remarked that large animals, such as the rhinoceros and the elephant, triturate very slightly the different kinds of food which they eat.

All the figures of the hippopotamus hitherto given are very imperfect; the best I know is undoubtedly that of Mr. Allaman, professor of medicine at Leyden. It was engraved from a drawing sent to him by Mr. Gordon. In my description of animals, I shall copy that which I executed myself, and I hope that it will give satisfaction to naturalists. When I had finished my observations, I immediately dispatched a Hottentot to bring two yoke of strong oxen next morning, to transport our capture; and, as it was now dark, we chose out a large tree, at the root of which we proposed to pass the night: but we did not go far from the banks of the river; for as we could not roll the animal farther, and were unwilling to expose it to the chance of being devoured by
wild

wild beasts, we were under the necessity of having it in our view. We were not surrounded or covered by many trees; and this rendered our situation still more critical. We might indeed have been easily surpris'd; but by means of extraordinary fires which we kindled, and of twenty shots fired at intervals, we remained all night in perfect tranquillity. We were not however able to sleep, for we were tormented by myriads of gnats, attracted by the vicinity of the water, and the coolness of the place we had chosen. One of my Hottentots, who fell asleep, was so stung by them, that his face swelled so much as to render it almost impossible to know him.

I took care to order one of the feet of the hippopotamus to be cut off, which my people prepared in the same manner as that of the first elephant I killed in passing the mountain called Duyvals-Kop, to go from the country of Auteniqua to that of Ange-Kloof. I found great difficulty in setting my people to work, for they had spent the whole night in stuffing themselves with the flesh of the hippopotamus. I saw them broil pieces two or three feet in length, and a foot in breadth; and they seem'd to be in want of nothing except sleep.

The

The foot which had been dressed for me during the night was served up for my breakfast; it was exceedingly nourishing; and I thought it even superior to that of the elephant: it was more delicate, and I never eat any thing in my life with more pleasure.

Though the hippopotamus is extremely fat, its grease has nothing in it disgusting; and it does not produce any of those bad effects which are occasioned by that of other animals. My people melted it, and drank it from basins, as if it had been broth. Besides this, by rubbing it over their bodies, they shone as much as if they had been varnished, and their swollen bellies sufficiently shewed that they had not been very sparing in their repasts during the night.

I had forgot to order a horse for myself; but Swanepoel supplied this omission; for the heat was excessive, and we were distant full six leagues from my camp. Having fixed a large chain to the head of the hippopotamus, and yoked twelve oxen to it, while they went along the banks of the river they experienced much difficulty and fatigue, either from the inequality of the road, or from the trunks of large trees, which every moment interrupted their

their passage; but when we once arrived at the level country, which was covered with long grass, I ordered the oxen to be relieved; and observing that they went on at a good pace, I mounted my horse, to get before them. Yager, my favourite dog, which never quitted me, and always followed me in my hunting excursions, was obliged for this time to remain behind, not being able to keep up with me. He copied the example of my Hottentots, and did not arrive with them till five in the afternoon.

The three hunters whom I had sent out in another quarter had also returned completely loaded, having killed two gnous and three antelopes; so that we found ourselves sufficiently stocked with provisions: but the great heat, and the friction of the hippopotamus against the earth, had so mangled and hurt its body, that some of the most tender and delicate parts were spoilt, and began to smell. On this account we were obliged to employ the night in cutting it up: part of it was salted in the skins of the two gnous which my hunters had brought with them; and the choice morsels I ordered to be put into a brandy barrel, the head of which we knocked out after we had

had drawn off the liquor into earthen jugs. This operation afforded my people an opportunity of getting drunk.

The night following our two lions returned again, and I imagined that all the jackals and hyænas of the country had assembled to pay us a visit. One of the latter had the boldness to cross our fires, and to advance close to the spot where we were. A Hottentot discharged his piece at it, but he unluckily missed his aim. The jackals even entered our camp; and, without the assistance of our dogs, we should have been forced to share our booty with these animals, which seemed determined not to be disappointed.

Next morning my people were employed in cutting to pieces the hide of the hippopotamus, to make what in the country are called *chan-boc*. These are whips for flogging the oxen which are under the hand of the driver on the pole of the waggon: they are shaped like those used in Europe for horses, but they are thicker and longer; and as the skin, where strongest, may be about two inches in thickness, they are cut into thongs two inches broad, which makes these pieces about two inches square. They are sometimes six feet in length, and
when

when cut out a weight is suspended at their lower extremity, to make them dry sooner. A round form is then given them by beating them with a mallet, observing to make them taper to a point at one of the ends. Those which are made smaller for riding have this advantage over those of Europe, that they never break, especially if from time to time care be taken to moisten them with a little oil.

The skin of the rhinoceros is employed for the same purpose; and the inhabitants of the Cape give it the preference (though a whip made of this is far from being equally solid as that made of the other), because it is capable of receiving a finer polish, has the beautiful colour of horn, and becomes almost as transparent.

With regard to the planters, who have no taste for elegance, and who prefer the useful to the agreeable, they employ only the former. Both, indeed, are sold at a very high rate, as the animals which furnish the materials for making these whips are no longer found in the colonies, and as those individuals who sometimes penetrate farther are not always certain of meeting with them.

The skin, however, of these animals cannot be better employed. It has a great resemblance, if we except its thickness, to that of the hog; and the hippopotamus approaches very near to that animal. To persons not previously informed, their fat would appear to be entirely the same; and, if that of the hippopotamus could be salted with all the precautions necessary, it might be preferred with more justice, as in all the colonies it is reckoned very wholesome. The people of the Cape are persuaded that, taken in a potion, it is sufficient to cure radically those who are afflicted with disorders of the breast. That which I preserved in bottles made of skins had the usual consistency of olive oil, during the great colds of winter.

The tusks of the hippopotamus are endowed with a quality which renders them preferable to ivory. The latter, in time, becomes yellow; but, in whatever manner the former may be prepared, they retain their whiteness in all its purity. It is not therefore astonishing that the Europeans, and, above all, the French, consider them as a great object of traffic. By the assistance of art they supply the deficiencies
of

of nature, and make a most admirable figure in the mouth of a pretty woman.

This prize was so seducing that my Hot-tentots depended on enjoying the pleasure of a second hunting excursion; but I found that we had a sufficiency of provisions, and that it would be better to employ our time more usefully, and to vary our occupations, or rather our pleasures, a little more. Having a strong inclination to try my net here, it was with great difficulty we could find a place in the river convenient for casting it; we, however, somehow succeeded; but we caught only about twenty fish, of different kinds. The largest were scarcely six inches in length; and when fried in the grease of the hippopotamus they appeared to me excellent. As this sport procured us no advantage worthy of attention, and as I was disgusted with the embarrassment we experienced in approaching the river in the manner we wished, I ordered the net to be carried away. During the time my people were employed in folding it, a bird perched near us, which, instead of being frightened by our presence, approached more and more, sending forth very shrill cries. I was told that it was the bird which discovers honey;

and I remarked in its gestures and cry a great affinity with those of the bird known to ornithologists under the name of the *cuculus indicator*; but it was much larger than those which I had before seen. My Hottentots, who respect it on account of the services which it renders them, begged me to spare it. A new species, however, was to be added to my collection, and I killed it. This bird is of the genus of the common *indicator*, but larger, and different in its plumage; it is a variety of it.

I did more afterwards, I killed three different species of these birds, all equally indicators.

The savages of Africa know them well, and treat them as deities. They live only on honey or wax; and it is they that involuntarily point out to them where they will find abundant repositories of both.

Naturalists, for what reason I know not, place the *indicator* among the cuckoos; it has no relation, however, to this genus, but in the conformation of its feet; and being different by other physical characters, it is much more so by its manner of living. At the risk of being exposed to an anathema from the cabinets

nets of the scientific, I must continually repeat that large volumes piled up in libraries are nothing to the book of nature ; and that an error, though supported by an hundred eloquent pens, is nevertheless still an error.

This bird is no more a cuckoo than pies, barbets, perroquets, toucans, and all those species which have two toes before and two behind. If it is to be ranked in any known class, it would belong rather to that of the barbets, because it has more affinity to these.

In its stomach I found nothing but honey and wax : I did not observe the smallest portion of any insect. Its skin is thick, and so tough, that when it is fresh it can scarcely be penetrated by a pin. This to me is an instance of the wonderful precaution of nature, which having destined it to contend for its subsistence with the most ingenious of all insects, gave it a covering strong enough to defend it from their stings.

It builds its nest in hollow trees, climbs up to it in the same manner as the wood-pecker, and hatches its eggs itself. This circumstance is sufficient to separate it totally from the cuckoo, and to make it a new genus.

In my ornithology will be given accurate

figures and descriptions of the three species of *indicators* which I know.

My Hottentot, Klaas, on returning from hunting, brought me an eagle which he had killed. It was a species I had never before seen, and which no author has described. For this service, I rewarded him in a proper manner, and gave him a ration of tobacco; not that I ought to be generous towards a man whom I tenderly loved, and to whom I could not refuse the smallest favour, without being cruel, but by his example to excite all my people to make some discoveries.

This bird, which was entirely black, seemed to me, by its characteristics, to belong rather to the vulture than the eagle kind; but I knew that it differed in its manners. In every thing else, the analogy is very great; for, when necessary, the eagle becomes a vulture; that is to say, when pressed by hunger, if nothing better occurs, for the moment, it feeds as well as any other bird of prey upon rotten carrion; and it is a great error to imagine that it lives only upon what it catches itself. When I caused the remains of the large animals we had killed to be scattered in the fields, in order to attract carnivorous birds, eagles and
butcher-

butcher-birds came also to partake of them, as well as vultures.

I must here ask pardon of the ancient and modern poets, for thus degrading the dignity of this noble animal: it is shocking I confess, to see this sublime bird of the master of the gods fall shamefully upon the scattered remains of an infectious carcase, and feed with great pleasure.

On the 18th we spent part of the night in firing our pieces to drive away two more lions, and a voracious flock of hyænas. I did not sleep till very late, and when I awaked I was greatly surpris'd to find about a score of the Gonaqua Hottentots in my camp. This visit, and its consequences, deserve a more ample detail. The reader, in this plain narration, will acquire juster ideas respecting the African savages, than from all the dissertations of philosophers.

The chief approached to pay his respects to me, and the women in full dress marched behind him. They all shone very much, and had been newly *boughoued*; that is to say, after rubbing their bodies with grease, they had besprinkled themselves with a kind of red powder, made of a root named in the country

boughou, and which has a very agreeable odor. Their faces were all painted in a different manner, and each of them made me some small present. One gave me ostrich's eggs, another a young lamb, and some offered me an abundant provision of milk in baskets which appeared to be made of osier. These utensils astonished me much. "Milk in baskets!" said I: "such an invention undoubtedly announces a great deal of ingenuity!" And calling to mind those milk vessels made of copper, which were formerly used at Paris, before they were proscribed by the wisdom of the police, I perceived, on comparing them with the former, how inferior a great people, with all their arts, their learned men, and their Louvre, often are, in respect of their simplest wants, to those whom they affect to despise.

These pretty baskets are woven of so delicate reeds, and so close in their texture, that they may be employed in carrying water; on this account I found them of very great service afterwards. The chief of the Gonaquas informed me that they were made by the Caffres, from whom they procured them by giving them other things in exchange.

The chief, who was named *Haabas*, made
me

me a present of a bunch of ostrich feathers, exceedingly beautiful. To shew him how much I valued it, I immediately tore away a plume of the same kind, which I wore in my hat, and put his in its place. By the looks of the good old man, I could easily perceive how much he was pleased with what I had done; and he still farther testified by his gestures and words the satisfaction he received from my conduct.

It was now my turn to shew my gratitude to the chief, and I began by giving him a few pounds of tobacco. I was about to enjoy a most agreeable scene at very little expence, and to render more than one happy. By a common signal Haabas ordered all his people to approach; and in an instant they formed themselves into a circle, and squatted down like so many apes. All the tobacco was distributed; and I remarked, with much pleasure, that the portion which Haabas reserved for himself was not larger than any of the rest. I was sensibly affected by this goodness of heart and spirit of justice, which he displayed in so simple and natural a manner; and I gave him for himself, in addition to the present made before, a knife, a piece of steel, a box of tinder,

7

and

and a necklace of large glass beads. To the women I gave beads and copper wire for bracelets. Amidst these reciprocal presents and the sentiments of affection with which they mutually inspired us, I observed a young girl of sixteen, confounded with the crowd, who shewed more curiosity in examining my person, than eagerness to share in the trinkets which I was distributing to her companions. She looked at me with so much attention, that I approached her that she might have more time to survey me at her leisure. I found that her figure was altogether enchanting; she had the freshest and the most beautiful teeth in the world; her person was slender and elegant, and her shape, formed to inspire love, might have served as a model for the pencil of Albano. She was the youngest of the Graces, under the figure of a Hottentot.

The impressions made by beauty are universal: it is a sovereign who reigns over all; and I was sensible, by the profusion of my presents, that I bowed a little under its sway. My young savage soon grew familiar. I had given her a girdle, a pair of bracelets, and a necklace of large white beads, with which she seemed to be highly delighted. I untied from
my

my neck a red handkerchief, which she wrapped round her head; and with this dress she was what in polite language might be called charming. I took great pleasure in ornamenting her myself; and, when I had finished, she requested some trinkets for her sister, who had remained with the horde. With her finger she pointed out her mother; and at the same time informed me that she had no father. I harassed her with questions, for I found so many charms in her answers. Nothing could equal the pleasure I enjoyed in seeing her, except that which I received from her conversation. I asked her to remain with me, and made her promises of every kind; but when I spoke to her, above all, of carrying her with me to Europe; where I said all the women were queens, and commanded hordes of slaves; far from suffering herself to be tempted, she rejected all my proposals, and without any ceremony began to grow peevish and impatient. A monarch could not have overcome her resistance, and the sorrow which she felt from the mere idea of quitting her family and her horde. I concluded by begging her at least to bring her sister to me, telling her that she would have every reason to be satisfied in her

her

her turn. This she promised to do ; and at the same instant she fixed her eyes upon a chair that stood not far from me. Having shewn me a knife which I had left there by chance, I presented it to her, and she immediately gave it to her mother.

This girl's whole thoughts were continually engaged by her dress, which to her was entirely new. She touched her arms, her feet, her necklace, and her girdle, and put her hands twenty times to her head to feel her handkerchief, which pleased her much. Having opened my dressing-box, I drew from it a mirror, which I placed before her ; and she surveyed herself some time in it with much attention and complaisance. By her gestures and various attitudes, she sufficiently shewed how much she was satisfied ; I do not say with her figure, but with her ornaments, which still made the strongest impressions on her mind. When she had dressed in the morning, before the horde set out to see me, she had rubbed grease and tallow over her cheeks, which I ordered to be cleaned and washed ; but I could never persuade her that this assistance of art destroyed the charms of nature, which had formed her very pretty. Whatever ingenuity I employed

in

in my reasoning, and whatever might be the effect of her complacency, in restoring to her fresh cheeks that delicate bloom of youth so frail and fading, she was always attached to her villanous black grease with as much obstinacy as the ladies in Europe are attached to their rouge, and to all their pastes, which are no less disgusting, and perhaps much more pernicious.

My young beauty having begged me to give her my mirror, I complied with her request; and she took a wonderful advantage of this favour, which I had so readily granted, to ask me for every thing that struck her fancy. I always suffered myself to be overcome; but I was at length obliged to refuse her several articles, both on account of their being indispensably necessary to me, and from a fear that she might make a dangerous use of them. My knee-buckles had also tempted her; for the stones with which they were set had greatly attracted her eyes; and I should have been very glad to have had it in my power to gratify her once more. How much did I wish upon this occasion for the most wretched pair of steel, to replace this article of luxury, in other respects very useless! Unluckily these
were

were the only pair I had in my possession: I gave her to understand that they were absolutely necessary to me, and from that moment she never more thought of them. She had the good sense not to be affronted at any of my refusals; it was sufficient for me to say no only once, to make her change her object.

I found her name difficult to be pronounced, disagreeable to the ear, and very insignificant according to my ideas; I therefore gave her a new one, and called her *Narina*, which, in the Hottentot language, signifies a flower. I begged her to retain this pretty name, which suited her in many respects; and this she promised to do as long as she lived, in remembrance of my visit to her country, and as a testimony of my love, for she was already no stranger to this passion; and in her natural and affecting language fully shewed how powerful the first impression is, and that, in the bosom of the African desarts, one must not even attempt to be happy.

Having ordered a sheep to be killed, and a large quantity of our hippopotamus to be dressed to regale our guests, they gave themselves up to all the extravagance of joy. Every body

danced; and my Hottentots, like gallant and polite gentlemen, regaled these savages with their music. The most skilful performers sounded the goura, the joumjoum, and the rabouquin; the lucky Jews harp was not forgotten; and this new instrument produced the most lively sensations in all the company. Narina, like all other pretty women, who think nothing impossible to them, wished to try it also; but, like all other pretty women, who soon become impatient with their lesson, she disdainfully threw away the instrument, which she found detestable.

The whole of this day was spent in frolics and merriment; and my people distributed their ration of brandy, independent of that which I had ordered to be given them in particular. I with pleasure observed that Narina could not taste it; and this sobriety redoubled the esteem I had entertained for her; for I detest this liquor, and am astonished that our women should be fond of this most disgusting of poisons.

I ordered a quantity of wood necessary for making our fires to be collected early, and this operation was soon performed. The Gonaquas joined the party, and made ample provision for themselves, as I had permitted them

them to remain till the next morning, and had assigned them a place at some distance from my camp, where they might pass the night.

In the evening when the fires were kindled, I regaled my people with tea and coffee. Narina seemed to like the tea, but the colour of the coffee made her conceive an aversion to that liquor. I put my hand upon her eyes, and made her swallow half a cupful more of it; but she still gave the preference to tea. She even drank of it very often; and this on her part was a piece of finessè which I pretended not to perceive, and which afforded me much amusement. I am persuaded that she did not much relish this liquor, but she made haste to swallow it, that she might, in the bottom of the cup, get at a piece of sugar-candy, which she had seen me throw into it.

After this frugal repast, and the diverting scenes it procured me, the dancing recommenced; and towards midnight the need of repose put an end to our pleasures.

Having for some time slept in my waggon to avoid the night damps, I entrusted the chief of the Gonaquas with the care of guarding my camp, and I lodged the old man in my largest tent.

The reader perhaps expects to see my favourite

avourite excepted from the law by which I confined all the horde to certain boundaries, and has perhaps no faith in my continence. Narina kept close by me, and never thought of quitting her friend. I shewed her where her mother and friends were at some distance from us, and——Narina then bid me good night.

I dispatched two of my people completely armed, to pass the night near these Gonaquas, and to defend them from voracious animals. When every one had retired to rest, I ordered that no person after that should be suffered either to enter or to go out.

I could however scarcely sleep, for every thing that had happened since the arrival of these savages recurred to my imagination under the most whimsical and extraordinary colours. What I had learned respecting the manners and character of these people, compared with the ridiculous and insipid relations of our romantic travellers, appeared to me so pure, so simple, and so engaging; my conversations particularly with Haabas and Narina had interested me so much, that I cursed even the rapid moments which deprived me of these

animated scenes, and I regretted that I could not prolong their course.

Scarcely had the day begun to appear, when I awoke, and went to visit my Gonaquas, who were all sunk in profound sleep, huddled together under their krosses *. Narina was with her mother lying upon a mat, which I had given her to secure her from the moisture. The other seven women, heaped all together, formed a very pleasant group; for neither their heads nor their feet were to be seen, as they were entirely hid under their covering. Having saluted them by discharging my fusée at their ears, I saw a number of frightened countenances start up from below their krosses, which exhibited a most comic scene. Some of the sleepers however did not awake, which is not at all surprising; for the sleep of the Hottentots is near akin to a lethargy.

Having left them to recover the use of their senses at leisure, I went to traverse the banks

* Cloaks made of the skins of different animals, which the Hottentots all generally use, either to clothe them during the day, or to cover them in the night-time. I shall have occasion to speak of them in a fuller manner hereafter.

of the river, in order to shoot a few birds before the heat should commence; for the north wind, which in these latitudes performs the same office as the south in France, seemed to announce a very scorching day. At ten o'clock I returned with a few birds, and among others a red long-tailed fly-catcher, which I considered, and very justly, as a happy discovery. This charming animal, the predominant colour of which is indeed a most beautiful red, has a still more beautiful tuft on its head, and two very long feathers in its tail, which give it an air of dignity that the female does not share with it. This advantage, however, the male does not enjoy but in the breeding season, which continues three months: after that period these two feathers drop of themselves, and nothing then distinguishes the male from the female but a browner tint.

We must not confound this species of bird with one of the same kind described by Brisson and Buffon, under the name of the long-tailed crested fly-catcher of the Cape of Good Hope; for this bird is not found at the Cape: it belongs to India, and particularly to the island of Ceylon, and differs much from mine. The marks by which they are distinguished

will be related in my ornithology. I shall only here assure the reader that the two fly-catchers described under that name, one of which is red, and the other almost white, and which are given as two distinct species, form absolutely only one; and this variety in the colour arises from the difference of the seasons. One may be easily convinced of the truth of this, by examining in my collection one of these birds, which still partaking of both states clearly shews the successive passage from white to red.

That which I had killed never experienced such a change; and this distinction alone ought to make us not confound them, as has been hitherto done, but to establish a new species.

After depositing my capture in my tent, I returned to the camp of my guests; but I found there only men; all the women had disappeared: and I learned that they were gone to bathe. Being curious to see this ceremony, I repaired to the river; and I was not long in discovering them, for their voices and laughter soon conducted me to the spot. Having glided softly along between the trees and bushes, I got close to the bank without being perceived,
and

and found them all swimming, sporting in the water, and diving with wonderful dexterity. When I had surveyed these female bathers at my leisure, I soon put an end to their sport by firing my fusée; upon which they all plunged down in the water, leaving nothing above the surface but the points of their noses. I then seated myself on their clothes which were heaped together, where I took a pleasure in jeering them; and, shewing them their small aprons one after the other, invited them to come for them. Narina's mother laughed heartily at the embarrassment of her companions; for she had quitted the water before the rest, and was reposing herself under a tree, till they should join her. Having entreated me in vain a long time to depart, only one resource was left them, which they employed with a shrewdness that astonished me. Narina's mother well knowing the ascendancy that her beautiful daughter had over me, threw her apron and kross to her; the latter then dressing herself in the water, soon after came towards me, with the most simple and tender air, to beg that I would retire for a few moments, in order that these women might have time to put on their vestments. I at first pretended

tended to be a little obstinate; but Narina, taking me by the hand, dragged me along with her, till, being out of sight, she could call out to her companions that they might quit the water, and dress.

Narina becoming more and more familiar, continued to walk with me towards my tent, sporting as freely with me as she would have done with her brother, her parents, or her companions. She joked with me after her own manner, and teased me, sometimes struggling to disengage herself from my arms, and sometimes, to avoid me, jumping over bushes, ravines, and the broadest ditches. Being then young and vigorous, long inured to the most fatiguing labours, and a life a thousand times harder than that of these savages themselves, I could have defied an European Hercules: but whether it was custom, or some remains of gallantry, that made me employ only the half of my strength against the young Narina, or that in reality she shewed more address, and was more agile in her motions, she compelled me to desist, and I yielded under her efforts; but, above all, when she escaped from me, and got to a little distance, she outstripped me in the course, and was soon
beyond

beyond my reach. With what velocity did she run along the highways, and by a thousand windings return to conceal herself at the edge of a wood, and to surprize me as I passed!

As I observed birds of various kinds flying around in the forest, I could not help entering it, as this was the only method I could find of allaying the impetuosity of my young savage. Nothing could equal the pleasure she experienced on seeing me fire my fuzee, which I did often, and I killed about a score of birds. I had not carried any of my dogs along with me; but Narina, who supplied their place, caught in an admirable manner those which were only wounded. By this time I had lost sight of my camp, and had advanced rather too far. The sporting and play of my young companion at length bewildered me entirely; and she did not put an end to her romping until she had given me an excellent lesson, and made the best return possible to the trick I had played her a little before, on the banks of the river Groot-Vis. Having fallen in with this river, which I knew would direct me to my camp, I fired at a heron, and killed it. Falling near the bank, and being carried

away by the current, I was in danger of losing it; and this disappointment would have given me the greater uneasiness, as one of the same species, which I procured with much difficulty, had one day, by the negligence of some of my people, been entirely spoiled in my tent. I therefore plunged into the river, which reached up to my middle; but getting entangled in the herbs which grew on its banks, and having not yet forgot the accident at Queur-Boom, I was unwilling to advance farther. Narina, who perceived my embarrassment, and the awkward situation into which I had got by running after my bird, was much astonished that I should be afraid of trusting myself to the current. In an instant therefore she threw herself into the water, and began to swim, whilst I returned to the bank; but the cruel creature who had seized my bird, held it up in her hand, and, calling out to me, desired me to come and fetch it. After a thousand prayers, and the most earnest entreaties, instead of complying with my request, she made for the other bank, with the velocity of an arrow, where she ridiculed me at her ease, and laughed at me for my timidity. I have already said that I could not swim; and if ever there was a

conjuncture in which I had occasion to complain, this without doubt was a mortifying one, and which ought to have incited me in the strongest manner to supply this inexcusable deficiency in my education. When I found that I could have no influence over my pretty romp, I resolved to sit down on the banks of the river, and to wait for her with patience. She herself soon grew tired of her sport; and, throwing herself into the river again, swam over, after shewing her skill, by diving several times in her passage. While she was in the water I more than once presented my fuscée, as if about to take aim at her; but nothing that I could do seemed to terrify her. On this account she was still more playful and obstinate in refusing me my heron. We both however at length pursued our route very peaceably together, and returned towards my tent.

The rest of the Gonaqua women, whom we had left lower down on the banks of the river, having rejoined us, I could plainly read some remains of shame in their countenances and looks. I myself ought indeed to have blushed, for wounding their delicacy in so cruel a manner. On this occasion I had seen natural modesty, which is very different from that reserve

which women often assume through pride, and which is only an enticing stratagem, more dangerous than scandal reduced to the completest embarrassment.

After I had made my savages dine, I ordered the table to be brought upon which I dissected animals, and which I employed only for that purpose. This, with two chairs, formed all the furniture of my tent. I then began to flay the birds I had killed in the morning. This operation surpris'd them much ; they looked at me with astonishment, and could not conceive why I had deprived birds of their lives in order to strip them, and immediately after to restore them to their former figure. I did not however waste my time in boasting to them of the cabinets and collections of Europe, or in telling them how much they were esteemed. They undoubtedly might have wondered that I should have come so far with no other design than that of procuring animals : and the question of Narina, who asked me if there were no birds in my own country, appeared to me extremely simple and natural. I thought that no dissertation on this subject with savages, who would not have comprehended what I said, was equal to the pleasure
of

of preparing a king's-fisher, which I gave to my inquisitive beauty.

Haabas prevailed upon me to move my camp, in order that I might erect it nearer his horde, where he told me I should find a great variety of birds of every kind. Having given me to understand that we were only about two leagues distant from it, I promised that I would go thither in the course of a few days.

As he was preparing to depart, I regaled him and all his people with a dinner, and gave him a small provision of tobacco for himself, which afforded him much pleasure. Narina promised to bring me milk, and to return in a short time with her sister. At length, highly satisfied with each other, after a thousand farewells, these good people left me, accompanied by some of my Hottentots, whom I had commissioned to reconnoitre the way, and to procure me a few sheep by barter.

THE ...

... which I have ...

... the ...

... the ...

... the ...

... the ...

... the ...

... the ...

... the ...

... the ...

... the ...

